

Townsend Press 英语词汇学习丛书

Groundwork

# FOR A BETTER VOCABULARY

## 英语词汇基础

美国大学生中  
使用最多的  
词汇丛书!



R. Kent Smith • Beth Johnson • Carole Mohr

**图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据**

英语词汇基础 / (美) 史密斯 (Smith, R. K.) 等编著.  
—上海: 上海外语教育出版社, 2005  
(英语词汇学习丛书)

ISBN 7-81095-457-1

I. 英… II. 史… III. 英语 — 词汇 IV. H313

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2004) 第 109367 号

Copyright © 1998 by Townsend Press, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be  
reproduced in any form without permission in writing  
from the publisher.

This edition is published by arrangement with Townsend Press, and is  
for sale in the People's Republic of China, not including the Special  
Administrative Regions of Hong Kong and Macao, or Taiwan Province.

**出版发行: 上海外语教育出版社**

(上海外国语大学内) 邮编: 200083

**电 话:** 021-65425300 (总机)

**电子邮箱:** bookinfo@sflep.com.cn

**网 址:** <http://www.sflep.com.cn> <http://www.sflep.com>

**责任编辑:** 汪义群

---

**印 刷:** 中共上海市委党校印刷厂

**经 销:** 新华书店上海发行所

**开 本:** 850×1168 1/16 印张 14.75 字数 394千字

**版 次:** 2005 年 6 月第 1 版 2006 年 10 月第 2 次印刷

**印 数:** 5 000 册

---

**书 号:** ISBN 7-81095-457-1 / H · 155

**定 价:** 27.00 元

本版图书如有印装质量问题, 可向本社调换

# 出版前言

学习任何一门语言，词汇学习是其中的基础工程和关键部分。掌握尽可能多的单词词组，是每个语言学习者孜孜以求的目标。然而我们经常听到的声音是：单词太难记了！

市场上介绍单词记忆法或是词汇学习方法的书可谓俯拾皆是，提到的方法又是林林总总五花八门，词根词缀法、联想记忆法等等，不一而足。有没有一种更有趣更有效的学习词汇的方法呢？在此我们谨把美国大学生中用得最多最广的一套词汇学习丛书推介给大家。

该丛书由美国 Townsend Press 出版，我社原版引进，并根据中国学习者特点做了些改编。与时下图书介绍的单词记忆方法不同，该丛书的作者们倡导的是根据认知原理，通过积极学习 (active learning) 来熟悉掌握单词的方法。具体步骤是：首先，作者把要介绍的 8 个或者 10 个生词置于两道练习题中，让学习者通过语境，利用单词所在上下文中的例证、同义词、反义词等线索，推测 (infer) 或是猜测 (guess) 生词的意义。其次，就是通过大量的、反复的、多类型的练习，帮助学习者由推测或猜测词义，通过搭配练习 (matching words with definitions) 来识别词义 (identify each word's meaning)，通过完成句子、同义、反义或是类比 (analogy) 关系选择以及完形填空等练习，让学习者不断接触该生词并在各种场合中不断运用它，从而达到理解、巩固、掌握并最终自然而然地记忆单词的目的。在整个过程中，学习者是一个积极主动的参与者，而不是一个被动的记忆者。

除了上述主张的记忆方法不同，本套书还有以下特色：

- (1) **Words-in-Context Approach:** 本套书中的每个章节首先把要介绍的 8 个或 10 个生词通过练习题的形式介绍给读者，让读者通过上下文，猜测词义、熟悉词义并作出选择。
- (2) **Abundant Exercises:** 词义熟悉之后，编写者设置了大量的、各种类型的练习，包括词义搭配、选择题、完型填空等，加深巩固该章节中所介绍的 8 个或 10 个单词。每五六个章节组成一个单元，除了章节中的练习外，每一单元中还设有阶段复习性练习题，以巩固该单元中所介绍的所有词汇。
- (3) **Focus on Essential Words:** 读者看到书后，很自然地就会问为什么每本书中只讲述了 250 或 300 个单词呢？每本书前言部分对这一问题作了回答：编写者做了大量的调查，参考词频信息，运用电脑对所选词汇进行复核，最后确定了每一阶段的基本词汇。书中列出的也是这些



基本词汇的最常用意义。参照我国英语教学要求,六本书中 *Vocabulary Basics* 所涉及词汇与我国高中及非英语专业一年级相当、*Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* 所涉及词汇与我国非英语专业四级水平相当 (4200 词汇水平)、*Building Vocabulary Skills* 所涉及词汇与我国非英语专业六级、英语专业低年级相当 (6500 词汇水平)、*Improving Vocabulary Skills* 所涉及词汇与我国英语专业一二年级相当 (8000 词汇水平)、*Advancing Vocabulary Skills* 所涉及词汇与我国英语专业高年级相当 (12000 词汇水平)、*Advanced Word Power* 所涉及词汇与我国英语专业高年级及以上水平相当。

- (4) **Appealing Content:** 单纯的死记硬背单词十分枯燥,而且效果也不一定好。本丛书除了上述三个特色外,在练习内容的选择上也颇费心思。练习题内容饶有趣味,能吸引读者,让读者在记忆单词的同时,还能巩固语言知识。
- (5) **A Comprehensive Vocabulary Program:** 本系列6本图书,相互联系,按照由易到难排列,读者学完一本以后,可以继续学习更高层次的几本,不断挑战自己。
- (6) **User-friendly Format:** 为便于读者的学习,图书在版式设计上也颇费心思,让读者使用方便。

最后,我们衷心希望广大读者通过这套书的系统学习,不再觉得英语单词很难记忆。其实只要方法对了,记单词是一个很有趣、很有成就感的过程。

上海外语教育出版社



# Contents

**Note:** For ease of reference, the titles of the reading selections in each chapter are included.

<b>Preface</b>	<b>v</b>
----------------	----------

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>Pretest of the Whole Book</b>	<b>1</b>

## UNIT ONE

Unit One Pretest	
Chapter 1	Johnny Appleseed / The Lovable Leech? 8
Chapter 2	Finding Fault / What Do Your Hobbies Reveal About You? 14
Chapter 3	Fixing Up Furniture / Barbara's Date with Her Cousin 20
Chapter 4	The Vacuum-Cleaner Salesman / Peace at Last 26
Chapter 5	Study Skills to the Rescue! / How to Control Children 32
Unit One Review (Crossword Puzzle) 38	
Unit One Tests 39	

## UNIT TWO

Unit Two Pretest	
Chapter 6	Toasters / A Mean Man 48
Chapter 7	A Special Memory / Watch Your Manners! 54
Chapter 8	Big Brothers and Sisters / Kevin's First Date 60
Chapter 9	Differences in a Gym Program / Teaching A Lesson 66
Chapter 10	Knowing How to Argue / A Change of School, A Change of Heart 72
Unit Two Review (Crossword Puzzle) 78	
Unit Two Tests 79	

## UNIT THREE

Unit Three Pretest	
Chapter 11	Coming Out of a Coma / The Office Doughnut Contest 88
Chapter 12	The People's Choice / The Christmas Wars 94
Chapter 13	What's Your Type? / What a Circus! 100
Chapter 14	Practicing Kindness / The Stinking Rose 106
Chapter 15	A Modern Fairy Tale / Wolf Children 112
Unit Three Review (Crossword Puzzle) 118	
Unit Three Tests 119	



## UNIT FOUR

### Unit Four Pretest

Chapter 16	A Mismatched Couple / A Campaign to Become Class President	128
Chapter 17	The Famous Detective / Why So Quiet?	134
Chapter 18	Fear of Speaking / Do You Believe in Magic?	140
Chapter 19	The Miracle Runner / One of Those Days	146
Chapter 20	Pregnancy and Alcohol / A Criminal with a Tail	152

Unit Four Review	(Crossword Puzzle)	158
------------------	--------------------	-----

Unit Four Tests	159
-----------------	-----

## UNIT FIVE

### Unit Five Pretest

Chapter 21	Traveling with Children / Saving Earth's Natural Supplies	168
Chapter 22	More Fat, Anyone? / Is Prison Effective?	174
Chapter 23	She Changed My Mind / So Sue Me	180
Chapter 24	Fear of Public Speaking / Mrs. Thornton's Condition	186
Chapter 25	Wacky Weddings / The Cost of Hatred	192

Unit Five Review	(Crossword Puzzle)	198
------------------	--------------------	-----

Unit Five Tests	199
-----------------	-----

Posttest of the Whole Book	205
----------------------------	-----

## APPENDIXES

### A Answer Key 210

1. Answers to the Pretest of the Whole Book
2. Answers to the Unit Pretests
3. Answers to the Chapter Activities
4. Answers to the Posttest of the Whole Book

### B Word List 217

# Preface

---

The problem is all too familiar: *students just don't know enough words*. Reading, writing, and content teachers agree that many students' vocabularies are inadequate for the demands of courses. Weak vocabularies limit students' understanding of what they read and the clarity and depth of what they write.

The purpose of *Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* and the other books in the Townsend Press vocabulary series is to provide a solid, workable answer to the vocabulary problem. In the course of 25 chapters, *Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* teaches 250 important basic words. Here are the book's distinctive features:

- 1 **An intensive words-in-context approach.** Studies show that students learn words best by reading and using them repeatedly in different contexts, not through rote memorization. The book gives students an intensive in-context experience by presenting each word in nine different settings. Each chapter takes students through a productive sequence of steps:
  - Students infer the meaning of each word by considering two sentences in which it appears and then choosing from multiple-choice options.
  - On the basis of their inferences, students identify each word's meaning in a matching test. They are then in a solid position to deepen their knowledge of a word.
  - Finally, they strengthen their understanding of a word by applying it in five different words-in-context passages, including sentence-completion activities and high-interest fill-in-the-blank passages.

Each encounter with a word brings it closer to becoming part of the student's permanent word bank. *No comparable vocabulary book gives such sustained attention to the words-in-context approach.*

- 2 **Abundant practice.** Along with extensive practice in each chapter, there are a crossword puzzle and a set of unit tests at the end of every five-chapter unit. The puzzle and tests reinforce students' knowledge of the words in each chapter. In addition, most chapters reuse several words from earlier chapters (such repeated words are marked with small circles, like this<sup>o</sup>), allowing for more reinforcement. All this practice means that students learn in the surest possible way: by working closely and repeatedly with each word.
- 3 **Controlled feedback.** The opening activity in each chapter gives students three multiple-choice options to help them decide on the meaning of a given word. The multiple-choice options also help students to complete the matching test that is the second activity of each chapter. These features enable students to take an active role in their own learning.
- 4 **Focus on essential words.** A good deal of time and research went into selecting the 250 words featured in the book. Word frequency lists were consulted, along with lists in a wide range of vocabulary books. In addition, the authors and editors each prepared their own lists. A computer was used to help in the consolidation of the many word lists. A long process of group discussion



then led to final decisions about the words that would be most helpful for students on a basic reading level.

- 5 **Appealing content.** Dull practice materials work against learning. On the other hand, meaningful, lively, and at times even funny sentences and selections can spark students' attention and thus enhance their grasp of the material. For this reason, a great deal of effort was put into creating sentences and selections with both widespread appeal and solid context support. We have tried throughout to make the practice materials truly enjoyable for teachers and students alike. Look, for example, at the selections on page 13 that serve as the Final Check in Chapter 1.
- 6 **Clear format.** The book has been designed so that its very format contributes to the learning process. Each chapter consists of four two-page spreads. In the first two-page spread (the first such spread is on pages 8–9), students can easily refer to all ten words in context while working on the matching test, which provides a clear meaning for each word. The other two-page spreads allow students to see the words in a variety of contexts as they work through the fill-in activities.
- 7 **One in a sequence of books.** *Vocabulary Basics* is the most fundamental book in the Townsend Press vocabulary series. It is followed by *Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* (a slightly more advanced basic text), *Building Vocabulary Skills* (an even more advanced basic text), *Improving Vocabulary Skills* (an intermediate text), and *Advancing Vocabulary Skills* (a more advanced text). The most advanced book in the Townsend Press vocabulary series is *Advanced Word Power*. Together, the books create a strong vocabulary foundation that will make any student a better reader, writer, and thinker.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful for the enthusiastic comments provided by users of the Townsend Press vocabulary books over the life of the first edition. Particular thanks go to the following reviewers for their many helpful suggestions: Barbara Brennan Culhane, Nassau Community College; Carol Dietrick, Miami-Dade Community College; Larry Falxa, Ventura College; Jacquelin Hanselman, Hillsborough Community College; Shiela P. Kerr, Florida Community College at Jacksonville; John M. Kopec, Boston University; Belinda E. Smith, Wake Technical Community College; Daniel Snook, Montcalm Community College; and William Walcott, Montgomery College. We appreciate as well the editing help of John Langan and Paul Langan; the proofreading of Susan Gamer; and the remarkable design, editing, and proofreading skills of the indefatigable Janet M. Goldstein.

**R. Kent Smith**

**Beth Johnson**

**Carole Mohr**

# ***Introduction***

---

## **WHY VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT COUNTS**

You have probably often heard it said, “Building vocabulary is important.” Maybe you’ve politely nodded in agreement and then forgotten the matter. But it would be fair for you to ask, “Why is a good vocabulary so important? Can you prove it?” Here are four convincing reasons.

- 1 Common sense tells you what many research studies have also shown: vocabulary is a basic part of understanding what you read. A word here and there may not stop you, but if there are too many words you don’t know, comprehension will suffer. The content of textbooks is often difficult enough; you don’t want to work as well on understanding the words which express that content.
- 2 Vocabulary is a major part of almost every standardized test, including reading achievement tests, college entrance exams and vocational placement tests. Test developers know that vocabulary is a key measure of both one’s learning and one’s ability to learn. It is for this reason that they include a separate vocabulary section as well as a reading comprehension section. The more words you know, then, the better you are likely to do on such important tests.
- 3 Studies have shown that students with strong vocabularies are more successful in school. And one widely known study found that a good vocabulary, more than anything else, was common to people enjoying successful careers. Words are, in fact, the tools not just of better reading, but of better writing, speaking, listening, and thinking as well. The more words you have at your command, the more effect you can have on the people around you.
- 4 In today’s world, a good vocabulary counts more than ever. Far fewer people work on farms or in factories. Far more are in jobs that provide services or process information. More than ever, words are the tools of our trade: words we use in reading, writing, listening, and speaking. In addition, experts say that workers of tomorrow will be called on to change jobs and learn new skills at an ever-increasing pace. The keys to survival and success will be the abilities to read, write, speak, and learn in a quick and skillful way. A solid vocabulary is essential for all of these skills.

Clearly, there is powerful proof that building vocabulary is a key to success. The question then becomes “What is the best way of going about it?”

## **WORDS IN CONTEXT: THE KEY TO VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT**

Memorizing lists of words is a traditional method of vocabulary development. However, a person is likely to forget such memorized lists quickly. Studies show that to master a word, you must see and use it in various contexts — that is, different real-life sentences and paragraphs. By working actively and repeatedly with a word, you greatly increase the chance of really learning it.

The following activity will make clear how this book is organized and how it uses a words-in-context approach. Answer the questions or fill in the missing words in the spaces provided.

## Vocabulary Chapters

Turn to Chapter 1 on pages 8–13. This chapter, like all the others, consists of eight parts:

The **first part** of the chapter, on pages 8–9, is titled \_\_\_\_\_.

The left-hand column lists the ten words in the chapter. Under each **boldfaced** word is its \_\_\_\_\_ (in parentheses). For example, the pronunciation of *challenge* is \_\_\_\_\_.

Below the pronunciation guide for each word is its part of speech. The part of speech shown for *challenge* is \_\_\_\_\_. The vocabulary words in this book are mostly nouns, adjectives, and verbs. **Nouns** are words used to name something — a person, place, thing, or idea. Familiar nouns include *boyfriend*, *city*, *hat*, and *truth*. **Adjectives** are words that describe nouns, as in the following word pairs: *former* boyfriend, *large* city, *red* hat, *whole* truth. All of the **verbs** in this book express an action of some sort. They tell what someone or something is doing. Common verbs include *read*, *drive*, *discover*, and *imagine*.

To the right of each word are two sentences that will help you understand its meaning. In each sentence, the **context** — the words surrounding the boldfaced word — provides clues you can use to figure out the definition. There are four common types of context clues — examples, synonyms, antonyms, and the general sense of the sentence. Each is briefly described on the pages that follow.

*Common Context Clues***1 Examples**

A sentence may include examples that show what an unfamiliar word means. For instance, take a look at the following item from Chapter 2 for the word *category*:

When I was in high school, I didn't seem to fit into any **category**. I wasn't an athlete, a scholar, or a rebel.

The second sentence gives three examples of *category* — being “an athlete, a scholar, or a rebel.” To figure out what *category* means, think about those examples. What is the speaker saying he or she doesn't fit into? Look at the answer choices below, and in the space provided, write the letter of the answer you feel is correct.

\_\_\_ *Category* means      a.      goal.      b.      feeling. c.      group.

Since the speaker is talking about the types of groups in high school, you may have correctly guessed that answer *c* is the right choice.

**2 Synonyms**

**Synonyms** are words that mean the same or almost the same as another word. The words *joyful*, *happy*, and *pleased* are synonyms — they all mean about the same thing. A synonym serves as a context clue by telling the meaning of an unknown word that is nearby. For instance, the sentence below from Chapter 1 includes a synonym clue for the vocabulary word *peculiar*.



My brother thinks my chip-and-dip sandwiches are **peculiar**, but I don't think they're as strange as the peanut-butter-and-tuna sandwiches he eats.

Rather than repeat *peculiar* in the second part of the sentence, the author used a synonym. Find that synonym, and then from the choices below, write in the letter of the meaning of *peculiar*.

\_\_\_ *Peculiar* means            a. attractive.            b. unusual.            c. innocent.

In the sentence from Chapter 1, *strange* is used as a synonym for *peculiar*. Since another word for *strange* is *unusual*, the answer is *b*.

### 3 Antonyms

**Antonyms** are words with opposite meanings. For example, *help* and *harm* are antonyms, as are *work* and *rest*. An antonym serves as a context clue by telling the opposite meaning of a nearby unknown word. The sentence below from Chapter 2 provides an antonym clue for the word *deliberate*.

Manny's pushing me was quite **deliberate**; it wasn't accidental at all.

To underline the point, the author used an antonym of *deliberate*. Find the antonym, and use it to help you figure out what *deliberate* means. Then write in the letter of the meaning you choose.

\_\_\_ *Deliberate* means            a. easy.            b. fair.            c. planned.

The sentence suggests that *deliberate* pushing and *accidental* pushing are very different things. So we can guess that *deliberate* means the opposite of *accidental*. Another word that is the opposite of *accidental* is *planned*, so *c* is the correct answer — *deliberate* means "planned."

### 4 General Sense of the Sentence

Even when there is no example, synonym, or antonym clue in a sentence, you can still figure out the meaning of an unfamiliar word. For example, look at the sentence below from Chapter 1 for the word *surplus*.

More and more restaurants are donating their **surplus** food to homeless people.

After thinking carefully about the context, you should be able to figure out what kind of food restaurants would be given to homeless people. Write the letter of your choice.

\_\_\_ *Surplus* means            a. strange.            b. extra.            c. main.

From the general sense of the sentence from Chapter 1 plus your own common sense, you probably guessed that the restaurants are donating "extra" food. Answer *b* is correct.

By looking closely at the pair of sentences provided for each word, as well as the answer choices, you should be able to decide on the meaning of a word. As you figure out each meaning, you are working actively with the word. You are creating the groundwork you need to understand and to remember the word. Getting involved with the word and developing a feel for it, based upon its use in context, is the key to word mastery.

It is with good reason, then, that the directions at the top of page 8 tell you to use the context to figure out each word's \_\_\_\_\_. Doing so deepens your sense of the word and prepares you for the next activity.

- The **second part** of the chapter, on page 9, is titled \_\_\_\_\_.

According to research, it is not enough to see a word in context. At a certain point, it is important to see the meaning of a word. The matching test provides that meaning, but it also makes you look for and think about that meaning. In other words, it continues the active learning that is your surest route to learning and remembering a word.

Note the caution that follows the test. Do not proceed any further until you are sure that you know the correct meaning of each word as used in context.

Keep in mind that a word may have more than one meaning. In fact, some words have quite a few meanings. (If you doubt it, try looking up in a dictionary, for example, the word *make* or *draw*.) In this book, you will focus on one common meaning for each vocabulary word. However, many of the words have additional meanings. For example, in Chapter 1, you will learn that *challenge* means “a test of one’s abilities,” as in the sentence “My new job is a real challenge.” If you then look up *challenge* in the dictionary, you will discover that it has other meanings — for example, “a call to take part in a contest or fight,” as in “Ted never turns down a challenge to play any kind of game.” After you learn one common meaning of a word, you will find yourself gradually learning its other meanings in the course of your school and personal reading.

- The **third and fourth parts** of the chapter, on page 10, are titled \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

The first check consists of ten sentences that give you an opportunity to test your understanding of the ten words. After filling in the words, check your answers in the key at the back of the book. (Be sure to use the answer key as a learning tool only. Doing so will help you to master the words and to prepare for the remaining activities and the unit tests, for which answers are not provided.) The second check on page 10 then gives you another chance to deepen your understanding of the words.

- The **fifth part** of the chapter, on page 11, is titled \_\_\_\_\_. Here you will have a chance to learn words that are related to many of the ten main words in the chapter. Look on page 11, for example, and write down the three words that are related to *dependent* (one of the words in the chapter): \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
- The **sixth part** of the chapter, on page 12, offers practice in one of three areas: Word Parts, Synonyms and Antonyms, or Analogies. Each is explained below.

*Word Parts, Synonyms-Antonyms, and Analogies***Word Parts**

The first and third chapters in each unit contain word-part practices.

**Word parts** are building blocks used in many English words. Learning word parts can help you to spell and pronounce words, unlock the meanings of unfamiliar words, and remember new words.

This book covers twenty word parts. You will learn two types: prefixes and suffixes. A **prefix** is a word part that is found at the beginning of words. When written separately, a prefix is followed by a hyphen to show that something follows it. For example, the prefix *sur* is written like this: *sur-*. *Sur-* can mean “beyond” or “additional,” as in *surpass* (to go beyond) and *surcharge* (an additional charge).

A **suffix** is a word part that is found at the end of words. To show that something always comes before a suffix, a hyphen is placed at the beginning. For instance, the suffix *ly* is written like this: *-ly*. One common meaning of *-ly* is “in a certain way,” as in the words *gratefully* (in a grateful way) and *angrily* (in an angry way).

Each word-part practice begins with the meaning of a word part and examples. Fill-in items then help you remember and recognize the word parts. To see what these items are like, try the one below from Chapter 1 for the word part *sur*. On the answer line, write the word that best completes the sentence.

surcharge

surface

surpass

surplus

surtax

\_\_\_\_\_ In addition to the usual taxes, people who earn over a certain amount will have to pay a \_\_\_\_.

The sentence suggests that people who earn over a certain amount will have to pay an additional tax. Since you now know that *sur-* can mean “additional,” you probably wrote the correct word on the line: *surtax* (an additional tax).

(There is a third type of word part — a root. You will not be working with roots in this book. Roots are word parts that carry the basic meanings of words. For example, one common root is *vis*, which means “to see,” as in the words *visit* and *vision*.)

**Synonyms and Antonyms**

The second and fourth chapters in each unit contain synonym-antonym practices. You have already learned in this introduction that a **synonym** is a word that means the same or almost the same as another word and that an **antonym** is a word that means the opposite of another word. These practices will deepen your understanding of words by getting you to think about other words with the same or opposite meanings.

To see what the synonym questions are like, do the example below. Write the letter of the word that most nearly means the same as the first word, *hard*.

\_\_\_\_\_ **hard**

a. new

b. difficult

c. far

d. bad

Since *difficult* is another way of saying *hard*, the correct answer is *b*. Now, to see



what the antonym questions are like, do the example item below. Write in the letter of the word that most nearly means the opposite of *kind*.

\_\_\_ **kind**

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| a. silly | b. busy  |
| c. young | d. cruel |

The opposite of *kind* is *cruel*, so *d* is the correct answer.

### Analogies

The last chapter in each unit contains an analogy practice, yet another way to deepen your understanding of words. An **analogy** is a similarity between two things that are otherwise different. Doing an analogy question is a two-step process. First you have to figure out the relationship in a pair of words. Those words are written like this:

LEAF : TREE

What is the relationship between the two words above? The answer can be stated like this: A leaf is a part of a tree.

Next, you must look for a similar relationship in a second pair of words. Here is how a complete analogy question looks:

LEAF : TREE ::

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| a. pond : river | b. foot : shoe |
| c. page : book  | d. beach : sky |

And here is how the question can be read:

\_\_\_ LEAF is to TREE as

- |                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a. <i>pond</i> is to <i>river</i> . | b. <i>foot</i> is to <i>shoe</i> . |
| c. <i>page</i> is to <i>book</i> .  | d. <i>beach</i> is to <i>sky</i> . |

To answer the question, you have to decide which of the four choices has a relationship similar to the first one. Check your answer by seeing if it fits in the same wording as you used to show the relationship between *leaf* and *tree*: A \_\_\_ is part of a \_\_\_. Which answer do you choose?

The correct answer is *c*. Just as a *leaf* is part of a *tree*, a *page* is part of a *book*. On the other hand, a *pond* is not part of a *river*, nor is a *foot* part of a *shoe*, nor is a *beach* part of the *sky*.

We can state the complete analogy this way: *Leaf* is to *tree* as *page* is to *book*.

Here's another analogy question to try. Begin by figuring out the relationship between the first two words.

\_\_\_ COWARD : HERO ::

- |                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| a. soldier : military | b. infant : baby |
| c. actor : famous     | d. boss : worker |

*Coward* and *hero* are opposite types of people. So you need to look at the other four pairs to see which has a similar relationship. When you think you have found the answer, check to see that the two words you chose can be compared in the same

way as *coward* and *hero*: \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_ are opposite types of people.

In this case, the correct answer is *d*; *boss* and *worker* are opposite kinds of people. (In other words, *coward* is to *hero* as *boss* is to *worker*.)

By now you can see that there are basically two steps to doing analogy items:

- 1) Find out the relationship of the first two words.
- 2) Find the answer that expresses the same type of relationship as the first two words have.

Now try one more analogy question on your own. Write the letter of the answer you choose in the space provided.

\_\_\_\_ SWING : BAT ::

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| a. drive : car | b. run : broom     |
| c. catch : bat | d. fly : butterfly |

If you chose answer *a*, you were right. *Swing* is what we do with a *bat*, and *drive* is what we do with a *car*.

- The **seventh part** of the chapter, on page **13**, is titled \_\_\_\_\_. Here you have the context of two interesting passages in which to practice applying the words. The first two such passages, on page **13**, are titled \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

## FINAL NOTES

- 1 You now know, in a nutshell, how to proceed with the words in each chapter. Make sure that you do each page very carefully. Remember that as you work through the activities, you are learning the words.

How many times in all will you use each word? If you look, you'll see that each chapter gives you the opportunity to work with each word at least nine times. Each time that you work with a word adds to the likelihood that the word will become part of your active vocabulary. You will have further opportunities to use the word in the crossword puzzle and tests that end each unit.

In addition, many of the words are repeated in context in later chapters of the book. Such repeated words are marked with small circles, like this°. For example, what word from Chapter 1 is repeated in the second Final Check passage on page **19** of Chapter 2? \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 The facts are in. A strong vocabulary is a source of power. Words can make you a better reader, writer, speaker, thinker, and learner. They can dramatically increase your chances of success in school and in your job.

But words will not come without effort. They must be learned in a program of regular study. If you commit yourself to learning words, and you work actively and honestly with the chapters in this book, you will not only enrich your vocabulary — you will enrich your life as well.

# 合 閤 心





## PRETEST OF THE WHOLE BOOK

This test contains 100 items. In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

**Important:** Keep in mind that this test is for diagnostic purposes only. If you do not know a word, leave the space blank rather than guess at it.

- \_\_\_\_ 1. To **communicate** is to: a) anger b) inform c) hurry d) mistake
- \_\_\_\_ 2. If you **deceive**, you: a) mislead b) encourage c) prevent d) forbid
- \_\_\_\_ 3. An **earnest** person is: a) dishonest b) wealthy c) unpleasant d) sincere
- \_\_\_\_ 4. A story that is **fiction** is: a) made up b) exciting c) violent d) romantic
- \_\_\_\_ 5. A **theory** is a(n): a) opportunity b) unproven explanation c) certainty d) excuse
- \_\_\_\_ 6. To **determine** is to: a) suspect b) find out c) persuade d) compliment
- \_\_\_\_ 7. To **dispose of** is to: a) throw away b) ignore c) keep d) repeat
- \_\_\_\_ 8. Something that is **evident** is: a) hidden b) frightening c) obvious d) musical
- \_\_\_\_ 9. To **preserve** is to: a) pretend b) protect c) absorb d) expect
- \_\_\_\_ 10. To **restore** is to: a) repair b) destroy c) bury d) lift up
- \_\_\_\_ 11. To **appeal** is to: a) make a request b) say no c) take away the outside part d) repeat
- \_\_\_\_ 12. To **establish** is to: a) start b) knock down c) flatten d) repeat
- \_\_\_\_ 13. One's **potential** is one's: a) ancestors b) age c) possibility d) preference
- \_\_\_\_ 14. A **variety** is a(n): a) opinion b) mixture c) reason d) delay
- \_\_\_\_ 15. Something **wholesome** is: a) healthful b) disgusting c) foreign d) childlike
- \_\_\_\_ 16. To **possess** is to: a) plan b) adjust c) leave unchanged d) own
- \_\_\_\_ 17. A **procedure** is a(n): a) method b) opinion c) public d) piece of property
- \_\_\_\_ 18. To **renew** is to: a) find b) make active again c) force one's will upon d) attempt
- \_\_\_\_ 19. **Resources** are: a) supplies b) costs c) responses d) agreements
- \_\_\_\_ 20. To be **sufficient** is to be: a) less than is needed b) humorous c) empty d) enough
- \_\_\_\_ 21. To **assume** is to: a) suppose to be true b) prove to be false c) not care d) argue for
- \_\_\_\_ 22. To **exhaust** is to: a) refill b) remove from sight c) use up d) fall
- \_\_\_\_ 23. The **maximum** amount is: a) the worst b) the most c) the lightest d) the least
- \_\_\_\_ 24. An **objective** is a(n): a) bad influence b) reason to believe c) insult d) goal
- \_\_\_\_ 25. To **protest** is to: a) speak out against b) encourage c) prove d) test

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_ 26. If you are **anxious**, you are: a) sleepy b) young c) busy d) worried
- \_\_\_ 27. To **convince** is to: a) cause to believe b) refuse to accept c) disregard d) clean up
- \_\_\_ 28. An **inferior** product is: a) highly valued b) poor in quality c) heavy d) unbreakable
- \_\_\_ 29. To **overwhelm** is to: a) dissolve b) understand c) make helpless d) make whole
- \_\_\_ 30. A **thorough** job is: a) carefully done b) wasted c) forgotten d) well-paying
- \_\_\_ 31. To be **current** is to be: a) modern b) few in number c) good tasting d) likable
- \_\_\_ 32. To **maintain** is to: a) release from captivity b) keep in existence c) prove to be correct d) admire
- \_\_\_ 33. A **minimum** number is: a) the largest possible b) desirable c) the smallest possible d) more than expected
- \_\_\_ 34. To **originate** is to: a) imitate b) begin c) impress d) pretend
- \_\_\_ 35. To be **reliable** is to be: a) untrustworthy b) easily tricked c) dependable d) healthy
- \_\_\_ 36. To be **conscious** is to be: a) drowsy b) awake c) depressed d) purposeful
- \_\_\_ 37. Something **external** is: a) buried deeply b) on the outside c) unimportant d) helpful
- \_\_\_ 38. To be **incredible** is to be: a) unbelievable b) showy c) humble d) wasteful
- \_\_\_ 39. **Internal** means: a) inner b) uncommon c) easy d) understood by few
- \_\_\_ 40. A **remedy** is a(n): a) source of amusement b) usual manner of doing something c) collection of writings d) cure
- \_\_\_ 41. **Appropriate** actions are: a) rude b) impulsive c) unwise d) proper
- \_\_\_ 42. To **bewilder** is to: a) calm b) confuse c) accept d) explain
- \_\_\_ 43. **Emotion** is: a) feeling b) eyesight c) movement d) payment
- \_\_\_ 44. To **investigate** is to: a) abandon b) make secure c) examine d) insist
- \_\_\_ 45. To be **legible** is to be: a) heavy b) clear c) empty d) noisy
- \_\_\_ 46. To **analyze** is to: a) disturb b) get rid of (something) c) dislike d) examine
- \_\_\_ 47. A **category** is a(n): a) group of similar things b) means of expression c) lack of understanding d) denial
- \_\_\_ 48. One who is **critical** is: a) well-liked b) disapproving c) lacking intelligence d) not taking sides in a quarrel
- \_\_\_ 49. A **deliberate** act is: a) done on purpose b) unwise c) amazing d) criminal
- \_\_\_ 50. **Frustration** is: a) great delight b) discouragement c) cruelty d) luck

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_ 51. To be **accustomed to** is to be: a) unused to b) in the habit of c) unable to d) angry at
- \_\_\_ 52. To **misinterpret** is to: a) have respect b) prefer c) understand incorrectly d) get rid of
- \_\_\_ 53. To **occur** is to: a) disappear b) repeat c) respond d) happen
- \_\_\_ 54. When you **revise**, you: a) correct and improve b) discard c) copy without giving credit d) fail to complete
- \_\_\_ 55. A **version** is a: a) report based on one point of view b) poem c) hatred d) deliberately mean remark
- \_\_\_ 56. A **conflict** is a(n): a) period of time b) point of view c) lesson d) disagreement
- \_\_\_ 57. **Stress** is: a) tension b) relaxation c) enjoyment d) excitement
- \_\_\_ 58. A **unanimous** decision is: a) poorly thought out b) mixed c) based on complete agreement d) mistaken
- \_\_\_ 59. To **vary** is to: a) change b) insist c) remain the same d) recognize
- \_\_\_ 60. A **vicinity** is a(n): a) heated argument b) area around a place c) written pamphlet d) type of lamp
- \_\_\_ 61. A **burden** is a(n): a) hardship b) joy c) reply d) payment
- \_\_\_ 62. To be **economical** is to be: a) wasteful b) rich c) thrifty d) forgiving
- \_\_\_ 63. An **extravagant** person is: a) critical b) wasteful c) wise d) messy
- \_\_\_ 64. **Security** is: a) protection b) loneliness c) immaturity d) ridicule
- \_\_\_ 65. To **sympathize** is to: a) share feeling b) object c) refuse d) avoid
- \_\_\_ 66. To **coincide** is to: a) remove from consideration b) happen at the same time c) make clear d) read carefully
- \_\_\_ 67. A **considerable** size is: a) rather small b) too small c) too large d) rather large
- \_\_\_ 68. An **intentional** act is: a) on purpose b) accidental c) misguided d) against the law
- \_\_\_ 69. To be **unstable** is to be: a) usual b) strong c) unsteady d) complete
- \_\_\_ 70. To **utilize** is to: a) suggest b) make use of c) control by force d) accept as fact
- \_\_\_ 71. Something **artificial** is: a) natural b) impressive c) not natural d) worn out
- \_\_\_ 72. **Frequency** means: a) how often something happens b) how fast something is c) how loud something is d) where something comes from
- \_\_\_ 73. To **represent** is to: a) avoid talking about b) prefer c) be a symbol of d) allow to happen
- \_\_\_ 74. Something **temporary** is: a) expected to last forever b) impossible to achieve c) serving for a limited time d) clearly seen
- \_\_\_ 75. A **triumph** is a: a) victory b) defeat c) compromise d) battle

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_ 76. An **attitude** is a: a) decrease b) success c) frame of mind d) height
- \_\_\_ 77. A **contrast** is a: a) striking difference b) similarity c) suggestion d) bright color
- \_\_\_ 78. To be **excessive** is to be: a) kindly b) slow to anger c) not enough d) too much
- \_\_\_ 79. A **fragile** object is: a) expensive b) easily broken c) richly decorated d) tasteless
- \_\_\_ 80. To **indicate** is to: a) pay attention to b) fail to see c) go in d) point out
- \_\_\_ 81. An **emphasis** is a(n): a) refusal to speak b) betrayal c) importance given to something d) stubborn act
- \_\_\_ 82. To **interpret** is to: a) confuse b) make an effort c) light from within d) explain
- \_\_\_ 83. To **propose** is to: a) persuade b) suggest c) exaggerate d) leave out
- \_\_\_ 84. An **ultimate** experience is: a) common b) inefficient c) dangerous d) the greatest
- \_\_\_ 85. To be **vague** is to be: a) unclear b) shining c) in fashion d) embarrassing
- \_\_\_ 86. Something **apparent** is: a) impossible to see with the naked eye  
b) made up of many small parts c) obvious d) hard to understand
- \_\_\_ 87. If something is **automatic**, it: a) is easily moved b) operates by itself c) cannot change  
d) improves over time
- \_\_\_ 88. To **fulfill** is to: a) carry out b) fail at a task c) understand another's feelings  
d) give advice
- \_\_\_ 89. To **influence** is to: a) misunderstand b) excuse c) be offended d) persuade
- \_\_\_ 90. To **transfer** is to: a) find fault b) discontinue c) send from one place to another  
d) inspect
- \_\_\_ 91. To **complicate** is to: a) smooth over b) adjust c) make difficult d) recognize
- \_\_\_ 92. A **conscience** is a(n): a) sense of being awake b) inability to decide  
c) sense of right and wrong d) skill with numbers
- \_\_\_ 93. To **counsel** is to: a) improve b) approve c) give advice d) meet
- \_\_\_ 94. To **detect** is to: a) get b) complain c) remark d) notice
- \_\_\_ 95. To be **transparent** is to be: a) sent away b) dark in color c) seen through easily d) unusual
- \_\_\_ 96. To **comprehend** is to: a) dislike b) repeat c) protect d) understand
- \_\_\_ 97. Something **dramatic** is: a) impressive b) hard to notice c) odd d) boring
- \_\_\_ 98. To be **frank** is to be: a) untruthful b) youthful c) honest d) painful
- \_\_\_ 99. To **illustrate** is to: a) give an example b) destroy c) repair d) send off
- \_\_\_ 100. An **impression** is a(n): a) lie b) iron c) opinion d) center (of something)

**STOP.** This is the end of the test. If there is time remaining, you may go back and recheck your answers. When the time is up, hand in both your answer sheet and this test booklet to your instructor.

# Unit One

## Chapter 1

challenge	principal
dependent	solitary
fertile	suitable
peculiar	surplus
preference	transform

## Chapter 2

analyze	deliberate
attitude	excessive
category	fragile
contrast	frustration
critical	indicate

## Chapter 3

accompany	preserve
desperate	pursue
determine	rejection
dispose of	restore
evident	scarce

## Chapter 4

abundant	distinct
betray	exaggerate
comparison	inhabit
demonstrate	neutral
dispute	reduction

## Chapter 5

aggravate	intentional
cease	interference
coincide	obnoxious
considerable	unstable
humane	utilize



## Unit One: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| ___ 1. <b>challenge</b>    | a) a piece of sporting equipment    b) something requiring extra effort<br>c) an untrue and malicious story    d) a source of pain |
| ___ 2. <b>dependent</b>    | a) refusing aid    b) relying on others    c) easily angered    d) unable to read  |
| ___ 3. <b>fertile</b>      | a) alone    b) definite    c) productive    d) shy   |
| ___ 4. <b>peculiar</b>     | a) friendly    b) highly skilled    c) violent    d) odd   |
| ___ 5. <b>preference</b>   | a) expression of dislike    b) form of punishment    c) suggestion<br>d) first choice  |
| ___ 6. <b>principal</b>    | a) most important    b) small in number    c) physically large    d) purposeful  |
| ___ 7. <b>solitary</b>     | a) full of life    b) alone    c) clever    d) whole   |
| ___ 8. <b>suitable</b>     | a) proper    b) well-dressed    c) filled with regret    d) absent   |
| ___ 9. <b>surplus</b>      | a) insufficient    b) ruined    c) extra    d) planned   |
| ___ 10. <b>transform</b>   | a) change    b) remain the same    c) frighten    d) create  |
| ___ 11. <b>analyze</b>     | a) disturb    b) get rid of (something)    c) dislike    d) examine  |
| ___ 12. <b>attitude</b>    | a) decrease    b) success    c) frame of mind    d) dislike  |
| ___ 13. <b>category</b>    | a) group with characteristics in common    b) means of expression<br>c) lack of understanding    d) denial                         |
| ___ 14. <b>contrast</b>    | a) striking difference    b) similarity    c) suggestion    d) bright color  |
| ___ 15. <b>critical</b>    | a) well-liked    b) disapproving    c) lacking intelligence    d) not taking   |
| ___ 16. <b>deliberate</b>  | a) done on purpose    b) unwise    c) amazing    d) criminal   |
| ___ 17. <b>excessive</b>   | a) kindly    b) slow to anger    c) not enough    d) too much  |
| ___ 18. <b>fragile</b>     | a) poorly made    b) easily broken    c) richly decorated    d) tasteless  |
| ___ 19. <b>frustration</b> | a) great delight    b) discouragement    c) cruelty    d) luck   |
| ___ 20. <b>indicate</b>    | a) pay attention (to)    b) fail to see    c) object (to)    d) point out  |
| ___ 21. <b>accompany</b>   | a) abandon    b) meet unexpectedly    c) receive    d) go along with   |
| ___ 22. <b>desperate</b>   | a) in great need    b) content    c) furious    d) sorrowful   |
| ___ 23. <b>determine</b>   | a) suspect    b) find out    c) persuade    d) compliment  |
| ___ 24. <b>dispose of</b>  | a) throw away    b) ignore    c) silence    d) repeat  |
| ___ 25. <b>evident</b>     | a) hidden    b) brightly colored    c) obvious    d) musical   |

*(Continues on next page)*

- \_\_\_ 26. **preserve**      a) pretend   b) protect   c) absorb   d) expect
- \_\_\_ 27. **pursue**      a) capture   b) chase   c) control   d) rest
- \_\_\_ 28. **rejection**      a) invitation   b) action   c) possibility   d) refusal
- \_\_\_ 29. **restore**      a) repair   b) destroy   c) bury   d) lift up
- \_\_\_ 30. **scarce**      a) in great amount   b) not needed   c) hard to find   d) empty
- \_\_\_ 31. **abundant**      a) quickly used up   b) unwanted   c) overpriced   d) more than enough
- \_\_\_ 32. **betray**      a) cooperate with   b) allow to happen   c) be disloyal to   d) weigh down
- \_\_\_ 33. **comparison**      a) act of considering how two things are similar or different  
b) sense of freedom from danger   c) type of literature made of  
imaginary events   d) belief based upon little information
- \_\_\_ 34. **demonstrate**      a) explain by showing   b) break into pieces   c) bury  
d) have complete knowledge of
- \_\_\_ 35. **dispute**      a) formal agreement   b) sense of hopelessness   c) quarrel   d) opinion
- \_\_\_ 36. **distinct**      a) shady   b) without value   c) able to produce offspring   d) obvious
- \_\_\_ 37. **exaggerate**      a) overstate   b) lessen in size   c) state the truth   d) avoid
- \_\_\_ 38. **inhabit**      a) put to good use   b) serve as a substitute for   c) make up   d) live in
- \_\_\_ 39. **neutral**      a) changing one's opinion readily   b) refusing to take sides in a quarrel  
c) discovering the truth   d) acting against one's stated beliefs
- \_\_\_ 40. **reduction**      a) shipment   b) explanation   c) decrease   d) correction
- \_\_\_ 41. **aggravate**      a) improve   b) correct   c) ignore   d) make worse
- \_\_\_ 42. **cease**      a) continue   b) prepare   c) stop   d) allow
- \_\_\_ 43. **coincide**      a) remove from consideration   b) happen at the same time   c) make clear  
d) read carefully
- \_\_\_ 44. **considerable**      a) less than expected   b) heartless   c) impossible   d) large
- \_\_\_ 45. **humane**      a) kind   b) absent-minded   c) cruel   d) talented
- \_\_\_ 46. **intentional**      a) on purpose   b) accidental   c) misguided   d) against the law
- \_\_\_ 47. **interference**      a) sudden quiet   b) loss of heat   c) getting in the way   d) acceptance
- \_\_\_ 48. **obnoxious**      a) well-meaning   b) unpleasant   c) comical   d) unclear
- \_\_\_ 49. **unstable**      a) usual   b) strong   c) unsteady   d) complete
- \_\_\_ 50. **utilize**      a) suggest   b) make use of   c) control by force   d) accept as fact

<b>SCORE:</b> (Number correct) _____ $\times 2 =$ _____ %
---

# CHAPTER 1

challenge  
dependent  
fertile  
peculiar  
preference

principal  
solitary  
suitable  
surplus  
transform

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **challenge**  
/'tʃælɪndʒ/  
— noun

\_\_\_ Challenge means

- Ginny enjoys rock climbing. It's a difficult **challenge**, but she feels very proud after making a climb.
  - When the baby sitter arrived, he stared at the four active little boys he was expected to watch. "This will be quite a **challenge**," he sighed.
- a. reason.                      b. something boring.                      c. something requiring effort.

2 **dependent**  
/dɪ'pendənt/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ Dependent means

- Some animals can take care of themselves as soon as they are born, but human babies are **dependent** upon their parents for years.
  - Tyrone's father said to him, "You are still much too **dependent** on me. It's about time you got a job and supported yourself."
- a. relying.                      b. leading.                      c. puzzling.

3 **fertile**  
/'fɜːtaɪl/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ Fertile means

- Because its soil is so **fertile**, Iowa has many farms.
  - Our daughter's pet hamsters were so **fertile** that we ended up selling many baby hamsters back to the pet store.
- a. common.                      b. large.                      c. able to produce.

4 **peculiar**  
/'piːkjʊːliə(r)/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ Peculiar means

- Jack didn't know why people were giving him **peculiar** looks until he realized there was a large hole in his pants.
  - My brother thinks my chip-and-dip sandwiches are **peculiar**, but I don't think they're as strange as the peanut-butter-and-tuna sandwiches he eats.
- a. attractive.                      b. unusual.                      c. innocent.

5 **preference**  
/'prefərəns/  
— noun

\_\_\_ Preference means

- There are Chinese, Italian, and Indian restaurants nearby. What's your **preference** for dinner tonight?
  - What is your color **preference** for the living room? Do you like cool blues and greens or warm oranges and yellows?
- a. choice.                      b. skill.                      c. effect.

6 **principal**  
/'prɪnsəpəl/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ Principal means

- The **principal** cause of most success is hard work, not luck or talent.
  - The queen of England has no real power. The **principal** leader of England is the prime minister.
- a. most recent.                      b. false.                      c. chief.

7 **solitary**  
/ˈsɒlɪtəri/  
– adjective

- After taking a **solitary** vacation in my cabin for two weeks, I was ready to return to the company of other humans.
  - In the mood to be by herself, Melba looked forward to spending the evening in such **solitary** activities as reading and taking a long bubble bath.
- \_\_\_\_\_ *Solitary* means      a. friendly.                      b. proper.                      c. done alone.

8 **suitable**  
/ˈsjʊ:təbl/  
– adjective

- Sharon asked her mother if her blue dress was **suitable** for a funeral, or if she had to wear black.
  - Because the prices and food are so good, we decided that the Red Lion Inn would be **suitable** for our bowling banquet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ *Suitable* means      a. right.                      b. too expensive.                      c. important.

9 **surplus**  
/ˈsɜːpləs/  
– adjective

- More and more restaurants are donating their **surplus** food to homeless people.
  - The Barkleys had more kitchen supplies than they needed, so they gave their **surplus** pots and pans to their son, who had just gotten his own apartment.
- \_\_\_\_\_ *Surplus* means      a. strange.                      b. extra.                      c. main.

10 **transform**  
/ˈtrænsˈfɔːm/  
– verb

- I plan to **transform** this messy attic into an attractive office.
  - The magician seemed to **transform** a chicken's egg into an egg the size of a basketball.
- \_\_\_\_\_ *Transform* means      a. to accept.                      b. to repeat.                      c. to change.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Producing or able to produce much fruit, large crops, or many children
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Most important; main; leading
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Relying on others for aid or support
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Extra; more than what is used or needed
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Odd; strange
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A test of one's abilities; anything that calls for a special effort
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Happening or done alone
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To change in form or appearance
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Right for a certain purpose; proper; fitting
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Choice; first choice; something preferred

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. challenge	b. dependent	c. fertile	d. peculiar	e. preference
f. principal	g. solitary	h. suitable	i. surplus	j. transform

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Just one can of spinach \_\_\_\_s Popeye from a weakling into a hero.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. If land is always planted with the same crop, it will become less \_\_\_\_.  
Changing crops from one year to the next keeps the soil rich.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Although my \_\_\_\_ is for a daytime job, I will work at night if necessary.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Max and Helen had more clothes than they needed, so they donated  
their \_\_\_\_ clothes to a thrift store.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. I can't imagine what that \_\_\_\_ odor is from — it's like a mixture of  
burning tires and freshly cut grass.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. A man lived by himself in a cave most of his life — yes, his was a \_\_\_\_ life.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. I know you have reasons for quitting school. What's the \_\_\_\_ reason?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Baby-sitting with a lot of children isn't easy — it's a \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. My neighbors are looking for \_\_\_\_ homes for the eight puppies their collie  
gave birth to. They want homes where the pups will be well cared for.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Sometimes Estela felt like giving up, but she knew she couldn't because  
she had three young children and an elderly mother who were \_\_\_\_ on her.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. When I'm not feeling well, my \_\_\_\_ is to have lots of company, but  
\_\_\_\_\_ when my husband is sick, he prefers to be \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. In the last year, our neighbors have \_\_\_\_ed their unattractive yard into  
\_\_\_\_\_ something beautiful. The \_\_\_\_ change they made was to put in some  
lovely flowering plants; all of the other changes were small ones.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. Ben is happy to live at home, pay no rent, and use his mother's car,  
\_\_\_\_\_ but I don't think it's \_\_\_\_ for a grown man to be so \_\_\_\_ on his parents.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. Our tomato plants are almost too \_\_\_\_\_. It is a \_\_\_\_ to use or give away  
\_\_\_\_\_ all the tomatoes before they spoil.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. We had so many tomatoes that we ended up inventing some \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ recipes to use up the \_\_\_\_ fruit; perhaps the strangest was "Peanut  
Butter Tomato Pie."

## ➤ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>dependence</b> , <i>noun</i>	The state of relying on others for help or support
b. <b>independent</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not needing help from others
c. <b>preferable</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Deserving to be chosen over another; more desirable
d. <b>suit</b> , <i>verb</i>	To be right for; fit
e. <b>transformation</b> , <i>noun</i>	A striking change

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A part-time job in the evenings would \_\_\_\_ my school schedule perfectly.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. A baby's \_\_\_\_ on its parents is complete; it needs them to do everything for it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. By the age of 2, most children have moments of wanting to be \_\_\_\_, and they will push their parents away, saying, "Me do it!"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. There are two hotels in town — the Burke and the Oakwood Towers — but in my opinion, the Burke is \_\_\_\_ because it is quieter and has a swimming pool.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. At my ten-year high-school reunion, I saw several people who had gone through an amazing \_\_\_\_ — one quiet, shy girl had become an outgoing beauty, and one of the wildest boys in the class had become a priest.

f. <b>challenging</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Difficult; requiring special effort
g. <b>dependable</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Able to be trusted or relied upon
h. <b>fertilize</b> , <i>verb</i>	To make soil richer by adding material to it
i. <b>infertile</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Unable to produce children
j. <b>peculiarity</b> , <i>noun</i>	Something odd or strange

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Many gardeners save old food scraps and grass clippings and use them to \_\_\_\_ the garden.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Myrna is a nice person, but she does have one \_\_\_\_: she won't eat anything that she hasn't prepared herself.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. My beginning math course was easy enough, but I found algebra much more \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Jaime is the most \_\_\_\_ friend I have — he's always there when I need him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. When my sister and her husband realized they were \_\_\_\_, they decided to adopt three children who were brothers and sisters.



## ➤ Word Parts

A. The prefix *trans-* can mean “across” or “change to.”

**Examples:** *transport* — to take from one place across to another  
*translate* — to change from one language to another

a. transatlantic

b. transform

c. translate

d. transplant

e. transportation

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Trina's job is to \_\_\_\_\_ business letters from Spanish into English.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. You can \_\_\_\_\_ a room simply by painting it a different color.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ed one of Mark's kidneys into his sister.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Since my grandmother doesn't drive and there is no public \_\_\_\_\_ in her area, she depends on me to take her shopping.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The ship will cross the Atlantic Ocean next week. The ship's \_\_\_\_\_ trip begins in New York City and ends in England.

B. The prefix *sur-* means “over,” “upon,” “beyond,” or “additional.”

**Examples:** *surpass* — to go beyond  
*surtax* — an additional tax

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. surcharge

g. surface

h. surpass

i. surplus

j. surtax

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. I like to protect and shine the \_\_\_\_\_s of my wooden tables with wax.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. My garden produced so much zucchini that I gave big bagfuls of \_\_\_\_\_ squash to all of my neighbors.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. In addition to the usual taxes, people who earn over a certain amount will have to pay a \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The drive to raise money for the children's hospital was so successful that the money raised \_\_\_\_\_ed the goal that was set.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Because we brought so much luggage on our trip, we had to pay the airline a \_\_\_\_\_.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Johnny Appleseed

- |                   |                     |                    |
|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| a. <b>fertile</b> | b. <b>peculiar</b>  | c. <b>solitary</b> |
| d. <b>surplus</b> | e. <b>transform</b> |                    |

John Chapman, who is known to the world as Johnny Appleseed, must have been a strange sight. His (1) \_\_\_\_\_ clothing included cloth sacks for shirts and a tin pot for a hat.

In western Pennsylvania, where Johnny lived, many people grew apples. But there weren't any apples in the lands further west, which were just then being cleared and settled. So Johnny wandered among his neighbors, asking them for their (2) \_\_\_\_\_ apple seeds. During his lifetime, Johnny walked thousands of miles, making many long trips from his home to the valleys of Ohio and Indiana. Everywhere he went, he scattered seeds. Many of those seeds fell on (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ground and grew into strong trees.

Johnny often wandered through areas where Native Americans fought with the white settlers. Since Johnny was a loner, his travels were always (4) \_\_\_\_\_, and he carried no weapon — yet he was never harmed. The Indians believed that the Great Spirit especially loved people like Johnny, who was not like other people. In his own quiet way he (5) \_\_\_\_\_ed the American wilderness, filling it with thousands of flowering, fruit-filled trees.

### B. The Lovable Leech?

- |                     |                     |                      |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| f. <b>challenge</b> | g. <b>dependent</b> | h. <b>preference</b> |
| i. <b>principal</b> | j. <b>suitable</b>  |                      |

As highly developed as we human beings like to think we are, the fact is that we are still (6) \_\_\_\_\_ upon many lower forms of life. The (7) \_\_\_\_\_ way that this is true, of course, is our use of meat to eat and skins to wear. But there are other ways, sometimes strange ways, that we rely on other creatures. Take, for example, the leech. It would be a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ for anyone to really like a leech. It is a disgusting-looking worm that lives in freshwater ponds and streams. As many people have discovered when they've gone swimming, a leech's (9) \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner is human blood. It loves to attach itself to a swimmer's foot and sink in its teeth — as many as three hundred of them. The bite does not cause any pain. But the leech can suck out eight times its own weight in blood. "How disgusting," you are probably thinking. But listen to this. In recent years, doctors have found that leeches are the most (10) \_\_\_\_\_ way to remove extra blood from a person after an injury, especially around the eyes. Yes, leeches are honored guests in many modern hospitals.

# CHAPTER 2

**analyze**  
**attitude**  
**category**  
**contrast**  
**critical**

**deliberate**  
**excessive**  
**fragile**  
**frustration**  
**indicate**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **analyze**  
/ˈænəlaɪz/  
— verb

- Someone in the laboratory will **analyze** the blood sample to see if the patient has an illness.
- Before we can suggest solutions, we must carefully **analyze** the city's money problems.

\_\_\_ *Analyze* means

- a. to plan.                      b. to study.                      c. to create.

2 **attitude**  
/ˈætɪtjuːd/  
— noun

- Athletes need to have a positive **attitude**. Even if they have lost the previous game, they need to come into the next one ready to win.
- Rudy came to the party with a poor **attitude**; he was sure that he'd be bored and wouldn't have any fun.

\_\_\_ *Attitude* means

- a. set of rules.                      b. background.                      c. way of thinking.

3 **category**  
/ˈkætɪɡəri/  
— noun

- When I was in high school, I didn't seem to fit into any **category**. I wasn't an athlete, a scholar, or a rebel.
- The small store had many jazz and rock recordings, but not much in the **category** of country music.

\_\_\_ *Category* means

- a. goal.                      b. feeling.                      c. group.

4 **contrast**  
/ˈkɒntrɑːst/  
— noun

- Everyone is surprised to see that there's a **contrast** between Peggy's eyes — one eye is brown, and the other is green.
- I was struck by the **contrast** between the fancy cars and houses west of Main Street and the poor neighborhoods to the east.

\_\_\_ *Contrast* means

- a. disappointment.                      b. place.                      c. difference.

5 **critical**  
/ˈkrɪtɪkəl/  
— adjective

- My boss can be very **critical** of me when I don't do my best work, but she's also quick to praise me when I do well.
- My aunt is **critical** of her neighbors. She calls them lazy because their house needs painting and their yard is overgrown with weeds.

\_\_\_ *Critical* means

- a. fault-finding.                      b. jealous.                      c. proud.

6 **deliberate**  
/dɪˈlɪbəreɪt/  
— adjective

- Manny's pushing me was quite **deliberate**; it wasn't accidental at all.
- I'm sure our neighbor knew that the tall tree he was planting would keep the sun from our flowers. It was a **deliberate** dirty trick.

\_\_\_ *Deliberate* means

- a. easy.                      b. fair.                      c. planned.

**7 excessive**

/ɪk'sesɪv/

– adjective

- **Excessive** speed caused the accident; the truck driver was going nearly eighty miles an hour.
- Mrs. Hill's concern about her little boy's health is **excessive**. She rushes him to the doctor every time he gets the sniffles or scrapes his knee.

\_\_\_ *Excessive* means

- a. overly great.                      b. off and on.                      c. normal.

**8 fragile**

/'frædʒaɪl/

– adjective

- The lamp is **fragile**, so when you pack it, please put it in a deep box with plenty of newspaper around it.
- When our daughter was little, we kept our **fragile** dishes and glasses out of her reach. We knew she would break them.

\_\_\_ *Fragile* means

- a. broken.                      b. strong.                      c. breakable.

**9 frustration**

/'frʌ'streɪʃən/

– noun

- Trying to learn to roller-blade, I fell down twenty times and then crashed into a wall. Feeling more **frustration** than pain, I finally gave up.
- Elaine felt great **frustration** when she failed her driving test for the third time.

\_\_\_ *Frustration* means

- a. relief.                      b. discouragement.                      c. pleasure.

**10 indicate**

/'ɪndɪkeɪt/

– verb

- Jeff's frown seemed to **indicate** that he was unhappy with our plan.
- The parking-lot attendant pointed to **indicate** that I should drive the car all the way up to the fence.

\_\_\_ *Indicate* means

- a. to hide.                      b. to show.                      c. to plan.

**Matching Words with Definitions**

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ A feeling of anger and helplessness that comes from bad luck, defeat, or failure; disappointment
2. \_\_\_\_\_ A point of view; state of mind; way of thinking or feeling
3. \_\_\_\_\_ A group of people or things having something in common; type
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Too much; more than is reasonable
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Done on purpose; carefully planned
6. \_\_\_\_\_ An obvious difference
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Disapproving; tending to find fault
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Easily broken or damaged
9. \_\_\_\_\_ To examine carefully; study closely
10. \_\_\_\_\_ To show; serve as a sign or signal

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. analyze	b. attitude	c. category	d. contrast	e. critical
f. deliberate	g. excessive	h. fragile	i. frustration	j. indicate

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. To avoid the \_\_\_\_ of failing the driving test again, Elaine has decided to take driving lessons.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. A planned action is \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_ eating over the holidays led to my gaining three pounds.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A road sign with a picture of a leaping deer \_\_\_\_s that deer often cross the road at that spot.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. After losing every game last season, the soccer players began training this year with a poor \_\_\_\_\_. If they don't transform<sup>o</sup> their outlook, they will have another losing season.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Something that is \_\_\_\_ can be easily damaged.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Which \_\_\_\_ of movie do you prefer, comedy or action-adventure?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. When Maggie \_\_\_\_d her reasons for wanting to marry Joe, she realized that they were not good ones.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Many teenagers feel their parents are too \_\_\_\_ of their clothing, music, and friends.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. I was surprised by the \_\_\_\_ between kind, gentle Bill and his impatient, bad-tempered brother.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. There is a large \_\_\_\_ between things that fit in the \_\_\_\_ of junk food and those foods needed for basic nutrition.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. When a child is learning to play a musical instrument, parents should have an encouraging \_\_\_\_\_. Rather than being \_\_\_\_ of the child, parents should find things to praise.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. When we broke three glasses while washing the dishes, it wasn't \_\_\_\_\_. They were just too \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. Most people can deal with some \_\_\_\_\_, but if discouragement becomes \_\_\_\_\_, it can actually cause illness.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. When we \_\_\_\_ the citywide election returns, they will \_\_\_\_ how each neighborhood voted.



## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>analysis</b> , <i>noun</i>	A careful study of something, especially by looking at its parts
b. <b>contrasting</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Showing a noticeable difference
c. <b>deliberately</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Purposely
d. <b>excess</b> , <i>noun</i>	An amount that is greater than needed
e. <b>indication</b> , <i>noun</i>	A sign of something

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A fever is one \_\_\_\_ of illness. Headache and an upset stomach are other signs of being sick.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. No matter how many times Mike says it was an accident, I believe he \_\_\_\_ tried to knock me down.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Our garden is growing more vegetables than our family can eat, so we're giving the \_\_\_\_ to neighbors.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The laboratory's \_\_\_\_ of the blood sample showed that the patient was quite healthy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. We painted our living room in \_\_\_\_ colors — one wall is pale yellow and the others are dark green.

f. <b>categorize</b> , <i>verb</i>	To put into groups
g. <b>criticism</b> , <i>noun</i>	Comments about faults
h. <b>excessively</b> , <i>adverb</i>	To a point that goes beyond what is reasonable or wise
i. <b>frustrated</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Feeling discouragement
j. <b>uncritical</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Accepting of faults

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. When the candy machine didn't return my change, I was so \_\_\_\_ that I kicked it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. My parents \_\_\_\_ their books by subject — mysteries, health, humor, and so on.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. My instructor's \_\_\_\_ of my paper was tough, but helpful. In addition to pointing out the paper's faults, he suggested ways to correct them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. I'm completely \_\_\_\_ when it comes to pizza. Frozen or fresh-baked, crisp or soggy, thick crust or thin — I love it all.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Even though her son is now in college, Mrs. Hill is still \_\_\_\_ concerned about him. She calls him every day to be sure he's eating right and getting enough sleep.

➤ **Synonyms and Antonyms**

A. **Synonyms.** Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. **analyze**

- a. remember
- c. find fault with

- b. examine
- d. use

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. **attitude**

- a. height
- c. knowledge

- b. outlook
- d. skill

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. **category**

- a. group
- c. reaction

- b. purpose
- d. problem

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. **critical**

- a. absent
- c. nervous

- b. frightened
- d. disapproving

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. **indicate**

- a. plan
- c. show

- b. conceal
- d. disappoint

B. **Antonyms.** Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. **contrast**

- a. difference
- c. enjoyment

- b. environment
- d. sameness

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. **deliberate**

- a. accidental
- c. helpful

- b. harmful
- d. fortunate

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. **excessive**

- a. not real
- c. unexpected

- b. not enough
- d. required

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. **fragile**

- a. damaged
- c. unnecessary

- b. unbreakable
- d. beautiful

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. **frustration**

- a. showing ignorance
- c. being satisfied

- b. feeling hatred
- d. expressing surprise

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Finding Fault — And What to Do About It

a. **attitude**  
d. **excessive**

b. **category**  
e. **frustration**

c. **critical**

Are you one of those people who are constantly finding fault? Are you very (1)\_\_\_\_\_ of everyone else's mistakes? If the washing machine or the stereo breaks down, is your reaction (2)\_\_\_\_\_ anger and (3)\_\_\_\_\_? If so, beware! Too much bad temper and discouragement could be harming your health. Scientists say that faultfinders and those who are often angry actually seem to have more heart attacks. So if you fall into this (4)\_\_\_\_\_ of people, it's a smart idea to try to change your outlook. Learn to take things more calmly; learn to be more patient when someone or something disappoints you. If your (5)\_\_\_\_\_ improves, your health may improve too.

### B. What Do Your Hobbies Reveal About You?

f. **analyze**  
i. **fragile**

g. **contrast**  
j. **indicate**

h. **deliberate**

Mira, Pat, and Celia are sisters, close in age and similar in looks — but what a (6)\_\_\_\_\_ there is in their leisure activities! Mira loves an exciting challenge<sup>o</sup> and often takes (7)\_\_\_\_\_ risks. She has mastered the skateboard, she drives in stock-car races, and she's even tried boxing. In fact, she says she'd go skydiving if only she could afford it. Pat is a collector. She spends her spare time searching for old crystal and china — and taking care of it. She never minds the hours it takes her to wash and dust her precious, (8)\_\_\_\_\_ treasures. Then there's Celia, who wants to spend every possible minute reading — and that's all! You've never met Mira, Pat, and Celia, but doesn't this tell you a lot about them? If we (9)\_\_\_\_\_ how people spend leisure time, their interests and hobbies can reveal a great deal about their personalities. What do you think your hobbies and other activities would (10)\_\_\_\_\_ about you?

# CHAPTER 3

accompany  
desperate  
determine  
dispose of  
evident

preserve  
pursue  
rejection  
restore  
scarce

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **accompany**  
/ə'kʌmpəni/  
— verb

- The Myers asked my sister to **accompany** them to the seashore to help take care of their young children.
- In popular music, words usually **accompany** the tune. In much classical music, there are no words to go with the notes.

\_\_\_ *Accompany* means

- a. to go before.                      b. to go after.                      c. to go with.

2 **desperate**  
/'despəɾət/  
— adjective

- Extremely ill people may be so **desperate** for a cure that they will try anything.
- The earthquake victims are **desperate** for food and clothing.

\_\_\_ *Desperate* for means

- a. harmed by.                      b. in great need of.                      c. surprised by.

3 **determine**  
/di'tɜ:mɪn/  
— verb

- The doctor in the emergency room **determined** from an x-ray that Chen's ankle was sprained, not broken.
- Using a calculator, I **determined** that the "super-giant" box of laundry soap was a better buy than the "family economy" box.

\_\_\_ *Determine* means

- a. to regret.                      b. to remember.                      c. to discover.

4 **dispose of**  
/dɪs'pəʊz əv/  
— verb

- The sign said, "Lungs at work. Please **dispose of** all cigarettes, cigars, and pipes before entering."
- After losing forty pounds, Herb decided to **dispose of** all the clothes that reminded him of his old size. He never wanted to see them again.

\_\_\_ *Dispose of* means

- a. to get rid of.                      b. to pay for.                      c. to use up.

5 **evident**  
/'evidənt/  
— adjective

- The fact that my aunt dyes her hair is **evident** — her gray roots show.
- To make it **evident** that she didn't want to go out with James again, Crystal sent him back all his letters and gifts.

\_\_\_ *Evident* means

- a. useful.                      b. easy to see.                      c. unlikely.

6 **preserve**  
/'prɪ'zɜ:v/  
— verb

- Steps are being taken to **preserve** the remaining giant redwood trees of California and Oregon for future generations.
- To **preserve** its valuable old fabrics, the museum keeps them away from bright lights and extreme temperatures.

\_\_\_ *Preserve* means

- a. to keep safe.                      b. to sell off.                      c. to seek.

7 **pursue**  
/pə'sjuː/  
– verb

- At the age of 49, the woman decided to **pursue** a degree in social work and become a social worker.
- Victor plans to **pursue** an acting career in New York City. His goal is to become a great actor, not a great star.

\_\_\_ *Pursue* means

- a. to avoid.                      b. to work toward.                      c. to replace.

8 **rejection**  
/rɪ'dʒekʃən/  
– noun

- My brother was upset when he received a letter of **rejection** from a college he wanted to attend.
- Nita wasn't too disturbed when she didn't get the job she had interviewed for. "If you can't handle **rejection**, you have some growing up to do," she said.

\_\_\_ *Rejection* means

- a. respect.                      b. not being accepted.                      c. bad taste.

9 **restore**  
/rɪ'stɔː(r)/  
– verb

- During the 1980s, the Statue of Liberty was **restored**. The damaged torch and the 1,600 iron bands that hold the copper skin to the frame were replaced.
- Surprisingly, there have been cases where a bump on the head has **restored** the sight of a blind person.

\_\_\_ *Restore* means

- a. to fix.                      b. to harm.                      c. to give away.

10 **scarce**  
/skeəs/  
– adjective

- Since 1909 pennies are **scarce**, the one I own may be worth a lot of money.
- In the book *The Long Winter*, the author tells about a time when food was so **scarce** that she and her family lived on little more than bread for weeks.

\_\_\_ *Scarce* means

- a. common.                      b. clear.                      c. hard to find.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Obvious; clear
2. \_\_\_\_\_ To find out exactly; figure out
3. \_\_\_\_\_ To throw or give away; get rid of
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Having a great need or desire
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Rare; hard to get; not enough to meet demand
6. \_\_\_\_\_ To bring back to a normal or former condition; repair
7. \_\_\_\_\_ To protect; keep in good condition
8. \_\_\_\_\_ A saying "no" (to a request or desire); refusal
9. \_\_\_\_\_ To try to get or succeed in; seek
10. \_\_\_\_\_ To go along with; be together with

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.



➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. accompany	b. desperate	c. determine	d. dispose of	e. evident
f. preserve	g. pursue	h. rejection	i. restore	j. scarce

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. If you are \_\_\_\_ for food, that means you are in great need of it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. When we say that something is \_\_\_\_, we mean that it can be clearly seen or clearly understood.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Do you like ketchup to \_\_\_\_ your french fries, or do you prefer them plain?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The opposite of “plentiful” is “\_\_\_\_.”
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. There are several ways to \_\_\_\_ things you no longer want: put them in the garbage, recycle them, or give or sell them to someone who can use them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The opposite of “acceptance” is “\_\_\_\_.”
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. To \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of furniture, protect it from too much heat, sun, and moisture.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. A good way to \_\_\_\_ which twin is which is to look for the mole on Beth’s forehead.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Many athletes \_\_\_\_ an Olympic medal by practicing hours a day for years, but only a few athletes can actually win one.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. To \_\_\_\_\_ an old table, you must begin by removing all of the old varnish and paint.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. It is \_\_\_\_ that this old movie theater has been very well taken care of — the original seats and wallpaper have been \_\_\_\_d since 1924.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. Jill wants to be a zookeeper, but since such jobs are \_\_\_\_, she may need to \_\_\_\_ another kind of work.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. The woman was \_\_\_\_ for money, so she decided to sell her grandmother’s diamond ring. She was disappointed when the jeweler \_\_\_\_d that the diamond was a cheap imitation.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. The owners of the old car are trying to decide if they will \_\_\_\_ it with new parts and a lot of body work, or \_\_\_\_ it by giving it away.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. I offered to \_\_\_\_ my friend to the tryout for the play, thinking that if she did not get the part, she might need help in dealing with the \_\_\_\_.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>desperately</b> , <i>adverb</i>	In a way that shows a great need or desire
b. <b>disposal</b> , <i>noun</i>	The act of getting rid of something
c. <b>evidence</b> , <i>noun</i>	Something that helps prove a fact or belief; <b>proof</b>
d. <b>pursuit</b> , <i>noun</i>	The act of seeking or chasing
e. <b>reject</b> , <i>verb</i>	Refuse

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The \_\_\_\_ found by firefighters — matches and a gasoline can — prove that someone set the fire on purpose.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The runner tried \_\_\_\_ to be the first to cross the finish line, but he failed by inches.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Our silly dog spends hours in \_\_\_\_ of her own tail — which, of course, she never catches.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Why did Amy \_\_\_\_ the job that was offered to her? Did she take another one instead?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. \_\_\_\_ of nuclear waste is very difficult — people don't want such dangerous garbage near them.

f. <b>accompaniment</b> , <i>noun</i>	A musical part that provides the background for a soloist
g. <b>determination</b> , <i>noun</i>	The act of finding out something
h. <b>evidently</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Obviously; clearly
i. <b>preservation</b> , <i>noun</i>	Protection; the act of keeping something safe or in good condition
j. <b>scarcity</b> , <i>noun</i>	A shortage

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. After a \_\_\_\_ of just exactly why the car is squealing, the mechanics can figure out how to repair it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Because of freezes in Florida and California, there is a \_\_\_\_ of oranges this year.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The only \_\_\_\_ to the jazz singer was played on the flute.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. If the town doesn't start working on the \_\_\_\_ of some open space, soon there won't be a spot that isn't covered with a house or shopping center.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Jerome and his cousin Theo go everywhere together; \_\_\_\_, they are very good friends.

# ➤ Word Parts

A. One meaning of the suffix *-ly* is “in a certain way.”

**Examples:** *desperate* — in great need

*desperately* — in a way that shows great need

*grateful* — thankful

*gratefully* — in a thankful way

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. angrily

b. deliberately°

c. desperately

d. excessively°

e. skillfully

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Eva *in a deliberate°* way stuck her foot out as her little brother came by. As he fell, he yelled, “Hey, you did that on purpose!”
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The doctor sewed up the wound so *in a skillful* way that it did not even leave a scar.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. I guess I have been spending *in an excessive* way on clothes and eating out; I haven’t saved a cent for the last year.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Many neighbors stayed up all night, searching *in a desperate* way for the missing child.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The principal said to the class *in an angry* way, “There’s no good reason for such rude behavior toward a substitute teacher.”

B. One meaning of the prefix *re-* is “back.”

**Examples:** *reflect* — to bend light back

*recall* — to call back to mind; remember

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. recall

g. reflect

h. remove

i. repay

j. restore

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. To \_\_\_\_ this old lamp, you’ll need to put in new electrical wiring.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. When I get my next paycheck, I will \_\_\_\_ the ten dollars you lent me.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. I remember the man’s face, but I cannot \_\_\_\_ his name.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The truck’s headlights hit my rearview mirror, which \_\_\_\_ed the light right into my eyes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. “Please \_\_\_\_ your hand from my car,” said the young man.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Fixing Up Furniture

- |              |            |            |
|--------------|------------|------------|
| a. determine | b. dispose | c. evident |
| d. preserve  | e. restore |            |

I feel proud when I can fix up furniture that other people have (1)\_\_\_\_\_d of. Rather than spend a lot on new furniture, I like the challenge° of taking an old chair thrown out by a relative or an ugly bureau I've found in a neighbor's trash pile and trying to (2)\_\_\_\_\_ it to its original condition. I often find a beautiful piece of furniture hidden under many coats of paint or varnish. At first it is hard to (3)\_\_\_\_\_ how good or bad the piece underneath really is. I must carefully remove the old paint or varnish. If it becomes (4)\_\_\_\_\_ that the quality of the piece of furniture is good, I sand it until it is smooth. Then I stain it to bring out the wood's natural lines and colors. Finally, I apply new varnish to (5)\_\_\_\_\_ the wood from damage by water or heat. Fixing other people's "junk" has been an inexpensive way for me to get some beautiful furniture.

### B. Barbara's Date with Her Cousin

- |              |              |           |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|
| f. accompany | g. desperate | h. pursue |
| i. rejection | j. scarce    |           |

Barbara can finally laugh about the time twenty years ago when she was so (6)\_\_\_\_\_ for a date that she paid her cousin twenty-five dollars to go with her to the senior prom. She admits that dates were pretty (7)\_\_\_\_\_ for her in high school. However, when the prom tickets first went on sale, Barbara hoped that some handsome fellow would fall for her charms and ask her to the prom, and maybe even ask her to go steady. It didn't happen.

Back then, people didn't think it was very "ladylike" behavior to actively (8)\_\_\_\_\_ a date with a boy, but Barbara really wanted to go to the prom. Despite her fear of (9)\_\_\_\_\_, she got up her nerve to ask Gary. He already had a date. So she asked Emilio and then Chuck. They also said no.

One week before the prom, she called her cousin. He said, "Okay, but it will cost you." He said ten dollars was for being willing to (10)\_\_\_\_\_ her to the dance and fifteen dollars was for not telling anyone at the prom that they were related.

# CHAPTER 4

abundant  
betray  
comparison  
demonstrate  
dispute

distinct  
exaggerate  
inhabit  
neutral  
reduction

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **abundant**  
/ə'bʌndənt/  
— adjective

- Our apple tree bore such an **abundant** crop this year that we'll have plenty of applesauce all winter.
- Mom's energy is so **abundant** that the rest of us can't keep up with her. After a day's work, she'll bike ten miles and then say, "Let's shoot a few baskets before dinner!"

\_\_\_ *Abundant* means

- a. different.                      b. great.                      c. reasonable.

2 **betray**  
/bi'treɪ/  
— verb

- The prisoners refused to **betray** their country by telling its secrets.
- I didn't mean to **betray** my brother by telling our parents he was using drugs — I wanted to help him.

\_\_\_ *Betray* means

- a. to turn against.                      b. to give aid to.                      c. to argue with.

3 **comparison**  
/kəm'pærɪsən/  
— noun

- I decided which car to buy after making a **comparison** of all the cars in my price range.
- A **comparison** of Marty's two wives makes his second wife seem like a saint.

\_\_\_ *Comparison* means

- a. check of what is alike and different.                      b. argument.                      c. explanation.

4 **demonstrate**  
/'demənstreɪ/  
— verb

- I asked the salesman to **demonstrate** how to use the camera, but it was clear he didn't know how.
- When the new copying machine arrives in our office, someone who knows how to use it will **demonstrate** how all its features work.

\_\_\_ *Demonstrate* means

- a. to remember.                      b. to imagine.                      c. to show.

5 **dispute**  
/'dis'pjʊt/  
— noun

- My **dispute** with my brother about who would get the last piece of pie was settled when our father ate it.
- Business at the store was so slow that the salespeople had a **dispute** over who would get the next customer.

\_\_\_ *Dispute* means

- a. answer.                      b. disagreement.                      c. explanation.

6 **distinct**  
/'dis'tɪŋkt/  
— adjective

- The faces of the people in the faded old photo were not **distinct** — we couldn't identify anyone.
- Although the two bowls of onion dip looked the same, there was a **distinct** difference in their taste.

\_\_\_ *Distinct* means

- a. definite.                      b. healthy.                      c. hard to notice.

7 **exaggerate**  
/ɪg'zædʒəreɪt/  
– verb

- Dad, reminding us not to stretch the truth, always jokes, “I’ve told you a million times never to **exaggerate**!”
- I didn’t **exaggerate** when I called Randall a musical genius. He really does play the guitar amazingly well.

\_\_\_ *Exaggerate* means

- a. to ask questions.      b. to overstate.      c. to explain.

8 **inhabit**  
/ɪn'hæbɪt/  
– verb

- Six billion people **inhabit** the Earth.
- Bats often **inhabit** the attics of houses, barns, and other buildings.

\_\_\_ *Inhabit* means

- a. to show.      b. to live in.      c. to check.

9 **neutral**  
/ˈnju:trəl/  
– adjective

- If you ever go to a marriage counselor, don’t expect him or her to take sides in your problems with your spouse. A counselor must remain **neutral**.
- Switzerland has been a **neutral** country since 1648. It doesn’t participate or support either side in wars.

\_\_\_ *Neutral* means

- a. clear.      b. not taking sides.      c. not loyal.

10 **reduction**  
/rɪ'dʌkʃən/  
– noun

- When our company offered to pay us for sick time we didn’t use, there was a sudden **reduction** in the number of sick days taken.
- It seems everyone who runs for public office promises a **reduction** in taxes.

\_\_\_ *Reduction* means

- a. order.      b. quarrel.      c. cut.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ To live in
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Very plentiful; more than enough
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The act of checking or judging how two or more things are alike or different
4. \_\_\_\_\_ To say that something is larger or greater than it really is; overstate
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Clear; obvious; easy to see or notice
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Not taking sides in a quarrel
7. \_\_\_\_\_ An argument; a quarrel
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To be disloyal to; turn against
9. \_\_\_\_\_ A decrease; cutback
10. \_\_\_\_\_ To explain or teach by showing

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don’t need to check the definitions at all.



## ➤ Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. abundant	b. betray	c. comparison	d. demonstrate	e. dispute
f. distinct	g. exaggerate	h. inhabit	i. neutral	j. reduction

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. If someone's new job pays less than the old job, he or she has taken a \_\_\_\_\_ in pay.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Benedict Arnold was an American officer who secretly helped the British during the American Revolution; he is remembered as a man who \_\_\_\_\_ed his country.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. You \_\_\_\_\_ a point when you overstate it, as in saying, "I'm dying of hunger."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. We had such an \_\_\_\_\_ crop of tomatoes this year that we had enough to give to our neighbors.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. If you want to remain friends with two people who are quarreling, it is best to stay \_\_\_\_\_ and keep out of the fight.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. A \_\_\_\_\_ of our backgrounds and interests revealed we had a lot in common.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The uncooperative salesman refused to \_\_\_\_\_ how to use the VCR, saying, "Just read the manual and figure it out yourself."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Even though I was only 3 at the time, I have a \_\_\_\_\_ memory of the first time I saw the ocean.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The people who \_\_\_\_\_ Canada are called Canadians.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. When we say that two people had a \_\_\_\_\_, we mean that their fight consisted of words, not punches.

## ➤ Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. My roommates are having a \_\_\_\_\_ over whether to paint the kitchen yellow or tan. I'm remaining \_\_\_\_\_; I don't care what color it is.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. There has been a \_\_\_\_\_ in crime in our city this year. In \_\_\_\_\_ with last year, far fewer crimes were committed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. I'll admit that ants were \_\_\_\_\_ at our picnic, but let's not \_\_\_\_\_. There really were not a trillion of them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. Although I'd never sent E-mail on a computer before, Corey \_\_\_\_\_d how it works so clearly that I now have a \_\_\_\_\_ idea of how to do it myself.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. Homeless people secretly \_\_\_\_\_ed the abandoned building, but when someone \_\_\_\_\_ed them and told the police, they were thrown out.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>compare</b> , <i>verb</i>	To check on what is the same and different
b. <b>demonstration</b> , <i>noun</i>	An act of showing; presentation
c. <b>distinctly</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Clearly
d. <b>inhabitant</b> , <i>noun</i>	Someone who lives in a particular place; resident
e. <b>reduce</b> , <i>verb</i>	To make smaller or fewer

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The juggling class began with a \_\_\_\_ by the instructor, who juggled six cups and saucers, a teapot, and three muffins.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Tokyo, Japan, has the largest population of any city in the world — over 26 million \_\_\_\_s.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. I \_\_\_\_ remember asking you to buy bread and milk on your way home.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. If you \_\_\_\_ what it costs to serve homemade foods and prepared foods, you will see that you can save money by doing your own cooking.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Scientists are telling Americans to \_\_\_\_ the amount of fat in our diets. They say we eat much more fat than is healthy.

f. <b>abundance</b> , <i>noun</i>	A great or plentiful supply
g. <b>betrayal</b> , <i>noun</i>	Lack of loyalty
h. <b>disputed</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Being debated, or argued, about; being a subject of debate
i. <b>exaggeration</b> , <i>noun</i>	An overstatement; act of stating that something is larger or greater than it actually is
j. <b>habitat</b> , <i>noun</i>	The place where an animal or plant lives or grows

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. After the holidays, Elena complained, "I've gained a ton!" This was a slight \_\_\_\_, since she had actually gained three pounds.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. "I have never experienced such \_\_\_\_, " said Tom, after finding out that his best friend was having an affair with his wife. "It may be impossible to restore° my faith in either of them."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The tropical areas of Africa and Asia are the elephant's natural \_\_\_\_\_. We need to preserve° those areas so that elephants will have places to live.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The death penalty and abortion are two hotly \_\_\_\_ topics in the United States today.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. There was an \_\_\_\_ of food at the party: platters were heaped high with cold cuts, salads, breads, and desserts.

## ➤ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. **betray**

- a. encourage
- c. escape

- b. annoy
- d. be disloyal

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. **comparison**

- a. thoughts and feelings
- c. questions and answers

- b. check of how things are alike or different
- d. time and effort

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. **demonstrate**

- a. show
- c. entertain

- b. confuse
- d. judge

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. **dispute**

- a. argument
- c. fact

- b. agreement
- d. condition

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. **inhabit**

- a. go away from
- c. live in

- b. approach
- d. explore

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. **abundant**

- a. not enough
- c. lucky

- b. effective
- d. great

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. **distinct**

- a. quiet
- c. large

- b. not constant
- d. not clear

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. **exaggerate**

- a. admire
- c. understate

- b. destroy
- d. defend

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. **neutral**

- a. unusual
- c. frightened

- b. taking sides
- d. possible

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. **reduction**

- a. comment
- c. agreement

- b. increase
- d. answer

## > Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. The Vacuum-Cleaner Salesman

- |               |                |             |
|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| a. abundant   | b. demonstrate | c. distinct |
| d. exaggerate | e. reduction   |             |

I'll never forget the day a salesman (1)\_\_\_\_\_d his vacuum cleaner on my living room rug. I know some salespeople (2)\_\_\_\_\_ their product's good qualities, so I didn't believe everything he said. But I let him show me what his machine could do.

The first thing he did was deliberately° wipe his muddy feet on my rug. Next, he dumped an (3)\_\_\_\_\_ amount of ashes onto it. Then he vacuumed the mess up. In no time, there was a difference between the rest of the rug and the part he had dirtied and then cleaned. A clear light stripe now ran down the middle of my rug. The machine was great. He told me how lucky I was to have the chance to buy it then, because of a great (4)\_\_\_\_\_ in the price. Sadly, I had to tell him that even the lower price was too high for me. He then quickly thanked me and left.

Then I realized that he hadn't finished cleaning up all of the mess he had made. So I used my own vacuum cleaner, which did not do a very good job. As a result, I'm reminded of the frustration° of that day every time I walk through my living room. It still has a (5)\_\_\_\_\_ light stripe right down the middle.

### B. Peace at Last

- |            |               |            |
|------------|---------------|------------|
| f. betray  | g. comparison | h. dispute |
| i. inhabit | j. neutral    |            |

My new apartment is so nice and quiet in (6)\_\_\_\_\_ with my last one. In my old building, the people who (7)\_\_\_\_\_ed the apartments on both sides of me were always having (8)\_\_\_\_\_. For example, the woman in 401 and the man in 403 would argue all the time about politics. Once she yelled that she had trusted him to keep her secrets, but that he had (9)\_\_\_\_\_ed her by telling everyone in the building. He then loudly insisted that she was the one with the big mouth. In addition, his wife sometimes screamed at the woman for flirting with her husband. Although they tried to get me to take sides, I remained completely (10)\_\_\_\_\_. I don't know who was right or wrong. I just know that the excessive° number of noisy arguments was too much for me to bear, and I'm glad to be out of there.

# CHAPTER 5

aggravate  
cease  
coincide  
considerable  
humane

intentional  
interference  
obnoxious  
unstable  
utilize

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

### 1 **aggravate**

/ˈægrəveɪt/

– verb

\_\_\_ *Aggravate* means

- If you walk on your sprained ankle, you'll only **aggravate** the injury: the pain and swelling will get worse.
- If your next-door neighbors hate your dog, it's a difficult situation — so don't **aggravate** the problem by walking the dog on their lawn.

a. to make use of.      b. to make worse.      c. to create.

### 2 **cease**

/si:s/

– verb

\_\_\_ *Cease* means

- After the police warned him twice, our landlord **ceased** burning trash in the backyard, an illegal activity in our town.
- When the snowfall finally **ceased**, we went out to shovel the driveway.

a. to repeat.      b. to start.      c. to quit.

### 3 **coincide**

/ˌkəʊn'saɪd/

– verb

\_\_\_ *Coincide* means

- My best friend from high school and I have moved to different states. We try to make our visits to our hometown **coincide** so that we can see each other.
- My roommate is getting married on the same day as my cousin. I wish the weddings were not going to **coincide** because I'd really like to go to both.

a. to happen at the same time.      b. to be stopped.      c. to be interesting.

### 4 **considerable**

/kən'sɪdərəbl/

– adjective

\_\_\_ *Considerable* means

- After two hours and **considerable** effort, I finally found Vernon's apartment.
- Elena loves gardening, so she spends a **considerable** amount of time caring for flowers, vegetables, and herbs.

a. too little.      b. gentle.      c. quite a bit.

### 5 **humane**

/hju:'meɪn/

– adjective

\_\_\_ *Humane* means

- When our cat developed a fatal blood disease, we didn't want her to suffer. We felt it was more **humane** to have her painlessly "put to sleep."
- For years, mentally retarded people were often poorly cared for in large institutions. Happily, many now receive more **humane** treatment in small group homes.

a. wasteful.      b. fast.      c. caring.

### 6 **intentional**

/ɪn'tenʃənəl/

– adjective

\_\_\_ *Intentional* means

- The police believe the fire was **intentional**, although they don't know why someone would purposely burn down the library.
- I know I'm an hour late, but it wasn't **intentional**. A huge traffic accident held me up.

a. important.      b. planned.      c. late.

- 7 **interference**  
/ˌɪntəˈfɪərəns/  
– noun
- Because the street workers outside our classroom window were such an **interference**, the class was moved to the library.
  - I'm very fond of my mother-in-law, but I do not like her **interference** in arguments between me and my wife.
- \_\_\_ *Interference* means      a. help.      b. getting in the way.      c. silence.
- 8 **obnoxious**  
/ɒbˈnɒksjəs/  
– adjective
- The children visiting the chicken farm held their noses because of the **obnoxious** smell.
  - I won't go to the party if Lester is there. He always makes himself **obnoxious** by insulting and making fun of people.
- \_\_\_ *Obnoxious* means      a. not interesting.      b. popular.      c. not pleasant.
- 9 **unstable**  
/ˌʌnˈsteɪbl/  
– adjective
- The ladder felt so **unstable** that I was afraid to climb any higher than the third step.
  - The young man's personality was **unstable**. One minute he seemed quiet and satisfied, and the next minute he was angry about something.
- \_\_\_ *Unstable* means      a. not steady.      b. useful.      c. easy to break.
- 10 **utilize**  
/ˈjuːtɪlaɪz/  
– verb
- Don't throw bread away just because it's stale. Stale bread can be **utilized** to make bread crumbs and croutons.
  - Last summer, Cindy **utilized** her swimming skills as a camp lifeguard.
- \_\_\_ *Utilize* means      a. to sell.      b. to replace.      c. to use.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Very unpleasant; distasteful; disgusting
2. \_\_\_\_\_ To stop; discontinue
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Unsteady; wobbly; not reliable
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Done on purpose; planned
5. \_\_\_\_\_ To make worse
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Kind; sympathetic; merciful; gentle
7. \_\_\_\_\_ To happen at the same time
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Rather great; rather large
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The act of getting in the way of something; meddling in someone else's business; something that gets in the way
10. \_\_\_\_\_ To make use of; put to use, especially to good use

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. aggravate	b. cease	c. coincide	d. considerable	e. humane
f. intentional	g. interference	h. obnoxious	i. unstable	j. utilize

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. It's no wonder the vase fell over; the flowers were so top-heavy that the whole arrangement was \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. My brother is glad he'll be able to \_\_\_\_ his skills as a mechanic in his new job at a garage.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Surprisingly, going to bed and taking it easy can actually \_\_\_\_ back pain. Gentle movement is often more helpful.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A \_\_\_\_ amount of time is the opposite of a rather small amount of time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. You may feel that slurping with straws is \_\_\_\_, but my kids don't find it disgusting at all.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The young man was charged with arson — the \_\_\_\_ setting of a harmful fire.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The two funerals will \_\_\_\_; that is, they will take place on the same day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. My nosy neighbor calls what she does just "taking a healthy interest in people's lives," but I call what she does "\_\_\_\_."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. It really isn't \_\_\_\_ to give small children chicks and baby ducks as presents — the poor little birds are almost sure to die soon.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The opposite of "begin" is \_\_\_\_.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. "No pain, no gain" is bad advice when it comes to sports injuries. You can easily \_\_\_\_ an injury by playing before the pain has \_\_\_\_d.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. If a couple's marriage seems \_\_\_\_, family members may try to get involved. But \_\_\_\_ from relatives sometimes does more harm than good.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. It may take \_\_\_\_ effort to get along with an \_\_\_\_ coworker, but learning how to deal with difficult people is a valuable skill.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. Animal-rights activists say it is not right to \_\_\_\_ cats, dogs, and monkeys in medical experiments. However, many researchers argue that their treatment of the animals is \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. The vocabulary skills class and the study skills class \_\_\_\_ this semester. Scheduling them for the same day and time probably wasn't \_\_\_\_, but students who wanted to take them both are annoyed.



## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>aggravation</b> , <i>noun</i>	A worsening
b. <b>coincidence</b> , <i>noun</i>	A striking chance happening of events at the same time, as if they had been planned
c. <b>considerably</b> , <i>adverb</i>	To a rather large extent; in a rather large amount
d. <b>humanitarian</b> , <i>noun</i>	A person who helps further human welfare
e. <b>ceaseless</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Constant; never stopping

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. When Tania picked up her old friend at the airport, they were both so excited about seeing one another that they couldn't stop talking — the car was filled with their \_\_\_\_ chatter until they reached home.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. If you won the lottery, would you be a \_\_\_\_ and give some of the money to charity? Or — be honest — would you keep it all for yourself?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The patient's refusal to take his medicine led to an \_\_\_\_ of his illness — in fact, he nearly died.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. My husband is one of those people who get the blues over the Christmas holidays, but his spirits brighten \_\_\_\_ after New Year's Day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. My roommate and I discovered a funny \_\_\_\_: our mothers had been roommates at the hospital where we were both born.

f. <b>intention</b> , <i>noun</i>	A plan to do something
g. <b>interfere</b> , <i>verb</i>	To become involved in other people's business
h. <b>noxious</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Very harmful to health
i. <b>stable</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Steady; reliable
j. <b>utility</b> , <i>noun</i>	Usefulness; the quality of serving a use or purpose

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. To make the ladder more \_\_\_\_ while Luis climbed up to the roof, Andy and I held onto the sides.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The children had to be taken from the school building quickly when \_\_\_\_ fumes began escaping from the furnace. Luckily, none of them got sick.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The old saying "The road to hell is paved with good \_\_\_\_s" means that just planning to do good things is not enough; we must also do them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. We purchase most of our household items for their \_\_\_\_ — to sit on, to cook with, and so on. However, we buy works of art for their beauty, not their usefulness.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. If children are quarreling, should parents \_\_\_\_? Or is it better to stay out of the quarrel and let kids work things out for themselves?

## ➤ Analogies

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. AGGRAVATE : WORSEN ::

a. improve : make better	b. improve : make worse
c. heal : injure	d. raise : lower
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. CEASE : BEGIN ::

a. continue : go on	b. stop : quit
c. stop : start	d. hurry : rush
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. PRESERVE° : FURNITURE ::

a. restore° : repair	b. chair : furniture
c. find : lose	d. analyze° : problem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. OBNOXIOUS : PLEASANT ::

a. harmful : unpleasant	b. annoying : irritating
c. annoying : nice	d. pleasure : enjoyment
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. UTILIZE : TOOL ::

a. catch : run	b. shaky : wobbly
c. ship : car	d. swing : bat
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. UNSTABLE : STEADY ::

a. large : big	b. evident° : unclear
c. abundant° : plentiful	d. busy : happy
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. INTENTIONAL : ON PURPOSE ::

a. untrue : false	b. accidental : on purpose
c. planned : prevented	d. hoped for : feared
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. REJECTION° : ACCEPTANCE ::

a. hour : time	b. child : children
c. school : college	d. contrast° : similarity
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. INTERFERENCE : ASSISTANCE ::

a. reduction° : decrease	b. garbage : bag
c. teacher : subject	d. dispute° : agreement
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. SCARCE° : GOLD ::

a. fragile : glass	b. new : old
c. diamond : ruby	d. excessive° : deliberate°

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Study Skills to the Rescue!

- |                 |             |                 |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| a. aggravate    | b. coincide | c. considerable |
| d. interference | e. utilize  |                 |

College students say that one of their biggest headaches is what to do when several exams and assignments (1) \_\_\_\_\_; for example, when they have an exam and a quiz the same week that a paper and a report are due. To deal with this situation, don't panic — that will only (2) \_\_\_\_\_ your problem. Instead, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ some study skills that will make you a better manager of your time. First, you can get (4) \_\_\_\_\_ help simply by planning well. Figure out what will take the most time; probably the exam will need more study time than the quiz, and a long report might take more time than a short paper. Setting aside the right amounts of time will give you a sense of control. Second, be sure you get the most out of the time you've planned. Find a quiet place to work, and don't allow any (5) \_\_\_\_\_ from your friends or roommates, TV, radio, or the CD player. And third? Well, try adding your own ideas to the list. The more you add, the more self-confident you'll feel.

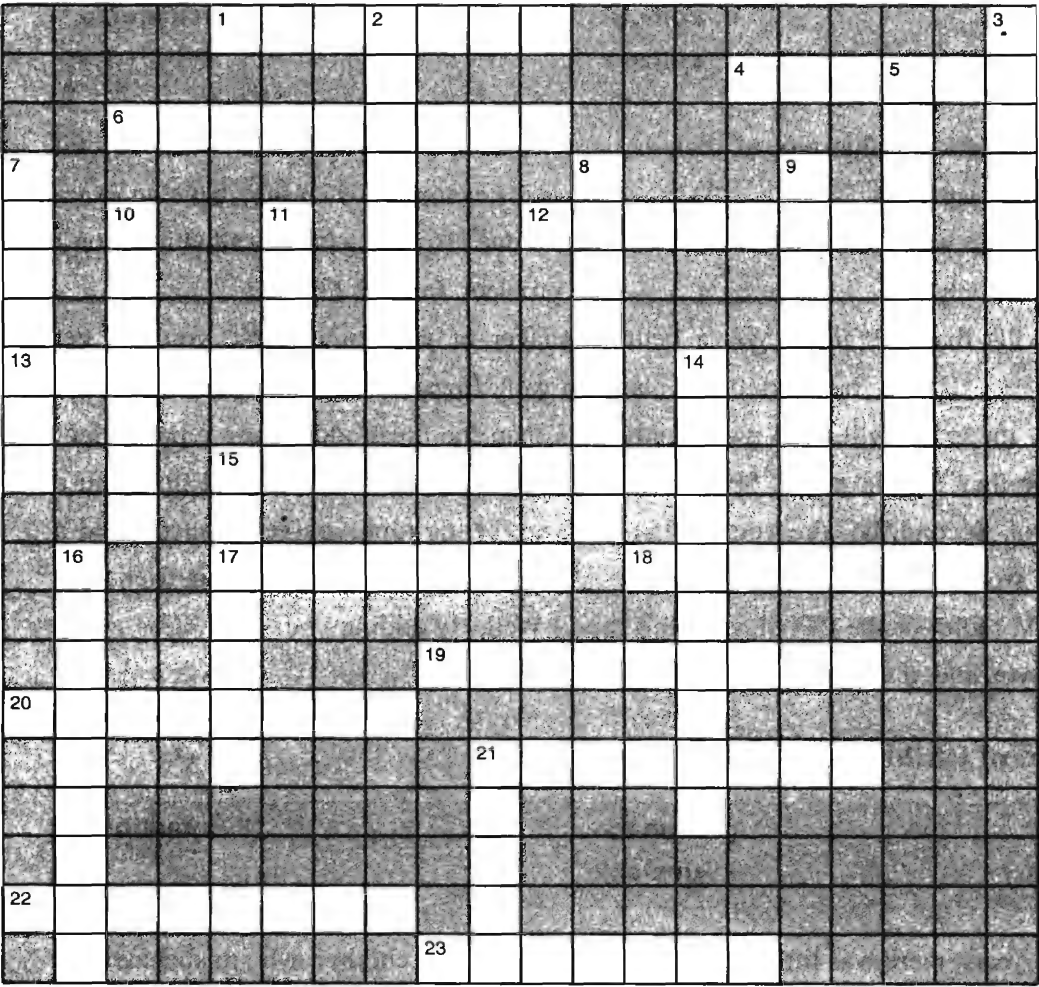
### B. How to Control Children

- |              |             |                |
|--------------|-------------|----------------|
| f. cease     | g. humane   | h. intentional |
| i. obnoxious | j. unstable |                |

For many years, there was little question about how to treat children who misbehaved — they were hit, sometimes beaten. That seemed natural and suitable<sup>o</sup> to parents, to teachers, and maybe even to the children. In our own time, though, many people have tried to find more (6) \_\_\_\_\_ methods, gentle ways to help children learn self-control. Of course, they recognize that children's behavior is often (7) \_\_\_\_\_. Kids can be noisy, rude, and destructive. Although that behavior isn't always done on purpose, sometimes it is (8) \_\_\_\_\_. But many adults believe that spanking and other physical violence won't make a child's bad behavior (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Indeed, hitting children may make them act even worse, as they learn to meet violence with more violence. Their willpower becomes weak and (10) \_\_\_\_\_; in other words, their ability to control themselves is shaky, rather than strong and firm. Some adults still believe that spanking is the best way to teach children, but this other approach certainly deserves consideration.

UNIT ONE: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit One. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



- accompany  
attitude  
betray  
cease  
challenge  
coincide  
critical  
deliberate  
dispute  
evident  
fertile  
fragile  
humane  
indicate  
inhabit  
neutral  
preference  
preserve  
reduction  
rejection  
scarce  
solitary  
surplus  
unstable  
utilize

ACROSS

1. To live in  
4. Rare; hard to get; not enough to meet demand  
6. A decrease; cutback  
12. To protect; keep in good condition  
13. To show; serve as a sign or signal  
15. Done on purpose  
17. Extra; more than what is used or needed  
18. Not taking sides in a quarrel  
19. A test of one's abilities  
20. Happening or done alone

21. To happen at the same time  
22. Unsteady; wobbly; not reliable  
23. Producing or able to produce much fruit, large crops, or many children

DOWN

2. A point of view; state of mind; way of thinking or feeling  
3. To be disloyal to; turn against  
5. A saying "no" (to a request or desire); refusal

7. To make use of; put to use, especially to good use  
8. Disapproving; tending to find fault  
9. Easily broken or damaged  
10. Obvious; clear  
11. Kind; sympathetic; merciful; gentle  
14. Choice; first choice; something preferred  
15. An argument; a quarrel  
16. To go along with; be together with  
21. To stop; discontinue

## UNIT ONE: Test 1

### PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A bucket of paint can \_\_\_\_ a room's looks.  
a. transform      b. accompany      c. challenge      d. utilize
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Jenna was afraid to climb up the \_\_\_\_ ladder — it was too wobbly.  
a. scarce      b. distinct      c. neutral      d. unstable
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Kwan thought my not inviting her to my party was a \_\_\_\_ insult. In reality, her invitation slipped under a book, so it never was mailed.  
a. deliberate      b. suitable      c. humane      d. scarce
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Don't scratch a mosquito bite! You'll only \_\_\_\_ the itching and end up feeling even worse.  
a. analyze      b. aggravate      c. indicate      d. utilize
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. My \_\_\_\_ aim in going to college is to get a good job when I graduate, but I hope to have a good time while I'm there as well.  
a. abundant      b. obnoxious      c. principal      d. desperate
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. It took a long time for doctors to \_\_\_\_ what Felicia was allergic to, but they finally figured out that it was her lipstick.  
a. utilize      b. preserve      c. determine      d. restore
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. After hours of \_\_\_\_ work at my desk, I am ready to spend some time with other people.  
a. abundant      b. solitary      c. humane      d. dependent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. My grandmother's old china doll is much too \_\_\_\_ for my daughter to play with; it would soon be broken.  
a. fragile      b. suitable      c. distinct      d. scarce
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. "Your secret is safe with me," said the handsome prince to the fair maiden. "I swear I will never \_\_\_\_ you!"  
a. restore      b. demonstrate      c. preserve      d. betray
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The students in history class noticed a \_\_\_\_ odor coming from the chemistry lab across the hall. The odor smelled like a mixture of rotten eggs and gasoline.  
a. suitable      b. scarce      c. fertile      d. peculiar

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. It is \_\_\_\_ that Wayne is interested in Shawna; he can't stop looking at her.  
a. humane      b. evident      c. dependent      d. critical
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. Animals that \_\_\_\_ a desert region are able to live there because they can go a long time without water.  
a. analyze      b. indicate      c. dispose of      d. inhabit
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. A salesperson came to our office to \_\_\_\_ how the new copier worked, but he didn't explain very clearly how to use the machine.  
a. preserve      b. restore      c. demonstrate      d. utilize

### PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. Suddenly, the music *ceased*, and the room was very quiet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 15. That jigsaw puzzle is a *challenge* because it is too easy. It's meant for very young children and has only six pieces.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 16. Because of *interference* by a fan who ran onto the playing field, the game was temporarily stopped by a referee.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 17. Punishments for criminals in the Middle Ages were *humane*. They included being burned alive, beaten to death, branded, and torn apart.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 18. Maya's elderly parents are too *dependent* on her. They constantly call her for help and advice.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 19. The bare, dry, stony fields look very *fertile*.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 20. Raspberries are so *abundant* in our city that when you can find them at all, they cost as much as five or six dollars for a tiny box.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 21. My *preference* is to go to an Italian restaurant tonight because I dislike spaghetti and pizza.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 22. The notice in the airplane said, "Seat cushions can be *utilized* for flotation" — or, in other words, you can use the cushions to float on if the plane crashes in water.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 23. The teenagers on the subway were especially *obnoxious* — they gave up their seats so some elderly people and a pregnant woman could sit down.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 24. Stone fences are common on New England farms because stones in the fields are so *scarce*.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 25. Teenage boys are sometimes nervous about asking a girl for a date because they fear *rejection*.

<b>Score</b> (Number correct) _____ × 4 = _____ %
---

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## UNIT ONE: Test 2

### PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. accompany	b. analyze	c. category	d. coincide	e. comparison
f. desperate	g. dispose of	h. intentional	i. neutral	j. reduction
k. restore	l. suitable	m. surplus		

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The man who stepped on my foot on the bus said, "Sorry! It wasn't \_\_\_\_\_. I didn't mean to do it!"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Darin's vegetable garden grew so well and produced so much that he didn't know what to do with the \_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes and zucchinis.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. A \_\_\_\_\_ between the two jobs didn't make it much easier for Marnie to decide; one paid better, but the other was more interesting.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Why do Mid-Autumn Festival and National Day \_\_\_\_\_ in some years, while in other years they are weeks apart rather than at the same time?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. My middle child hates to fight. When his brother and sister get into a quarrel, he always stays \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Americans think too much about weight \_\_\_\_\_. There is more to life than just losing weight!
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The town will \_\_\_\_\_ traffic patterns to find out if more traffic lights are needed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Some psychologists think there are two types of people: type A's, who are hard-working and uptight, and type B's, who are relaxed and easygoing. Which \_\_\_\_\_ do you belong in?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. If a poor man is \_\_\_\_\_ for money to buy medicine for his sick wife, do you think he should steal?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ the comic section of the Sunday paper. Save it and use it as wrapping paper — it's colorful and fun!
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. When Josie had a tooth pulled, she asked Mark to \_\_\_\_\_ her to the dentist and see that she got home all right afterward.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. Cut-off jeans might be \_\_\_\_\_ to wear to a ball game, but they would be out of place at a funeral.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. The town wants to \_\_\_\_\_ the old firehouse instead of tearing it down and building a new one.

(Continues on next page)



## PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_\_ 14. Ronda has an unusual *attitude* towards weekends, vacations, and holidays; she doesn't like them much and would just as soon go to work every day of the year.
- \_\_\_\_ 15. Corey's fame as a football player is *considerable* — nobody has ever heard of him.
- \_\_\_\_ 16. Imagine my *frustration* when I learned I had earned straight A's for the semester!
- \_\_\_\_ 17. Helen is far too *critical* of her husband. She adores him and never finds fault with him no matter how badly he treats her.
- \_\_\_\_ 18. To *preserve* the seat covers in his car, Denny had slipcovers put on. Then he put plastic over the slipcovers. Then he spread old sheets over the plastic.
- \_\_\_\_ 19. Denny's concern for his car's seat covers seems to be *excessive*. Who ever heard of using so many layers of covers at once?
- \_\_\_\_ 20. The old photograph was so *distinct* that the faces of the people in it were just a blur.
- \_\_\_\_ 21. "If you get robbed on the street," said the police officer, "never try to *pursue* the thief yourself. Call us and let us do the chasing!"
- \_\_\_\_ 22. There is a real *contrast* between the twins. They look so much alike that sometimes even their mother can't tell them apart.
- \_\_\_\_ 23. Don't *exaggerate* when you fill out a job application. If you were a store clerk, for instance, don't say you were the manager.
- \_\_\_\_ 24. When President Calvin Coolidge wanted to *indicate* that he was not a candidate for reelection, he said, "I do not choose to run."
- \_\_\_\_ 25. Lupe and Jorge are such lovebirds that they agree about everything, so they have one *disputé* after another.

Score (Number correct) \_\_\_\_\_  $\times 4 =$  \_\_\_\_\_ %

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## UNIT ONE: Test 3

### PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

- \_\_\_\_ 1. **accompany**    a) go        b) seek        c) figure out        d) go with
- \_\_\_\_ 2. **analyze**        a) worry about        b) argue about        c) study        d) change
- \_\_\_\_ 3. **attitude**        a) height        b) disappointment        c) point of view        d) skill
- \_\_\_\_ 4. **category**        a) type        b) book        c) difference  
d) check for similarities and differences
- \_\_\_\_ 5. **challenge**        a) quarrel        b) something needing effort        c) change        d) use
- \_\_\_\_ 6. **coincide**        a) change        b) live in        c) happen at the same time        d) show
- \_\_\_\_ 7. **comparison**        a) check for what is alike and different        b) increase  
c) feeling of anger        d) first choice
- \_\_\_\_ 8. **considerable**        a) unpleasant        b) typical        c) quite large        d) producing much
- \_\_\_\_ 9. **critical**        a) kind        b) hard to get        c) disapproving        d) harmful
- \_\_\_\_ 10. **demonstrate**        a) show        b) get rid of        c) turn against        d) overstate
- \_\_\_\_ 11. **desperate**        a) relying on others        b) in great need        c) clear        d) alone
- \_\_\_\_ 12. **determine**        a) prevent        b) explain        c) figure out        d) protect
- \_\_\_\_ 13. **evident**        a) hard to get        b) fitting        c) clear        d) too much
- \_\_\_\_ 14. **fertile**        a) careful        b) helpful        c) fearful        d) fruitful
- \_\_\_\_ 15. **indicate**        a) disapprove of        b) show        c) turn against        d) protect
- \_\_\_\_ 16. **inhabit**        a) make a habit of        b) seek        c) live in        d) leave
- \_\_\_\_ 17. **interference**        a) getting in the way        b) difference        c) decrease        d) refusing
- \_\_\_\_ 18. **preference**        a) first choice        b) disappointment        c) extra        d) test
- \_\_\_\_ 19. **preserve**        a) teach        b) turn against        c) destroy        d) protect
- \_\_\_\_ 20. **principal**        a) main        b) on purpose        c) plentiful        d) unusual
- \_\_\_\_ 21. **pursue**        a) examine        b) chase        c) get rid of        d) stop
- \_\_\_\_ 22. **restore**        a) remove        b) seek        c) give away        d) repair
- \_\_\_\_ 23. **solitary**        a) rare        b) alike        c) done alone        d) not reliable
- \_\_\_\_ 24. **transform**        a) bring back        b) send        c) change        d) end
- \_\_\_\_ 25. **utilize**        a) protect        b) use        c) show        d) stop

(Continues on next page)

**PART B: Antonyms**

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- \_\_\_\_ 26. **abundant**    a) healthy    b) unplanned    c) rare    d) unkind
- \_\_\_\_ 27. **aggravate**    a) attack    b) learn    c) move    d) make better
- \_\_\_\_ 28. **betray**    a) grow    b) be happy    c) keep    d) be loyal to
- \_\_\_\_ 29. **cease**    a) give    b) learn    c) ruin    d) start
- \_\_\_\_ 30. **contrast**    a) similarity    b) help    c) agreement    d) success
- \_\_\_\_ 31. **deliberate**    a) unusual    b) unclear    c) unplanned    d) unnecessary
- \_\_\_\_ 32. **dependent**    a) relying on oneself    b) working alone    c) knowing oneself  
d) not obvious
- \_\_\_\_ 33. **dispose of**    a) like    b) keep    c) leave    d) remember
- \_\_\_\_ 34. **dispute**    a) test    b) agreement    c) group    d) choice
- \_\_\_\_ 35. **distinct**    a) helpful    b) broken    c) unclear    d) well-known
- \_\_\_\_ 36. **exaggerate**    a) understate    b) go away from    c) think about    d) support
- \_\_\_\_ 37. **excessive**    a) not clear    b) not enough    c) strong    d) not able
- \_\_\_\_ 38. **fragile**    a) not proper    b) unhappy    c) unpleasant    d) unbreakable
- \_\_\_\_ 39. **frustration**    a) failure    b) kindness    c) too much    d) satisfaction
- \_\_\_\_ 40. **humane**    a) cruel    b) forgotten    c) important    d) too little
- \_\_\_\_ 41. **intentional**    a) proper    b) done poorly    c) plentiful    d) accidental
- \_\_\_\_ 42. **neutral**    a) paying attention    b) taking sides    c) proper    d) pleasant
- \_\_\_\_ 43. **obnoxious**    a) approving    b) common    c) pleasant    d) intelligent
- \_\_\_\_ 44. **peculiar**    a) difficult    b) ordinary    c) weak    d) excellent
- \_\_\_\_ 45. **reduction**    a) last choice    b) increase    c) start    d) answer
- \_\_\_\_ 46. **rejection**    a) approval    b) addition    c) lack    d) loss
- \_\_\_\_ 47. **scarce**    a) helpful    b) recent    c) too little    d) plentiful
- \_\_\_\_ 48. **suitable**    a) improved    b) unkind    c) improper    d) immediate
- \_\_\_\_ 49. **surplus**    a) success    b) lack    c) luck    d) trouble
- \_\_\_\_ 50. **unstable**    a) steady    b) easy    c) usual    d) quite small

Score (Number correct) \_\_\_\_\_  $\times 2 =$  \_\_\_\_\_ %

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

# Unit Two

## Chapter 6

**advise  
current  
deprive  
hesitate  
maintain**

**minimum  
objection  
originate  
penalize  
reliable**

## Chapter 7

**abrupt  
astonish  
classify  
complex  
consent**

**eager  
endure  
exclaim  
horizontal  
recollect**

## Chapter 8

**adequate  
appeal  
awkward  
customary  
establish**

**potential  
respond  
vanish  
variety  
wholesome**

## Chapter 9

**brutal  
discipline  
eliminate  
emphasis  
furthermore**

**interpret  
propose  
resort  
ultimate  
vague**

## Chapter 10

**accustomed  
anticipate  
linger  
miserable  
misinterpret**

**occur  
reluctant  
revise  
specific  
version**

## Unit Two: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| _____ 1. <b>advise</b>      | a) suggest   b) insist   c) plead   d) punish  |
| _____ 2. <b>current</b>     | a) modern   b) few in number   c) good tasting   d) likable                            |
| _____ 3. <b>deprive</b>     | a) provide   b) take away   c) obey   d) copy  |
| _____ 4. <b>hesitate</b>    | a) hurry   b) forbid   c) consider   d) pause  |
| _____ 5. <b>maintain</b>    | a) release from captivity   b) keep in existence   c) prove to be correct<br>d) admire |
| _____ 6. <b>minimum</b>     | a) largest possible   b) desirable   c) smallest possible<br>d) more than expected     |
| _____ 7. <b>objection</b>   | a) recommendation   b) dislike   c) reason   d) prize                                  |
| _____ 8. <b>originate</b>   | a) imitate   b) begin   c) impress   d) pretend  |
| _____ 9. <b>penalize</b>    | a) punish   b) reward   c) publish   d) give up  |
| _____ 10. <b>reliable</b>   | a) untrustworthy   b) easily tricked   c) dependable   d) unstable                     |
| _____ 11. <b>abrupt</b>     | a) sudden   b) expected   c) delayed   d) loud   |
| _____ 12. <b>astonish</b>   | a) continue   b) surprise   c) give away   d) stop                                     |
| _____ 13. <b>classify</b>   | a) make clear   b) put up with   c) set aside for later   d) arrange by type           |
| _____ 14. <b>complex</b>    | a) helpful   b) hard to understand   c) comfortable   d) smallest possible             |
| _____ 15. <b>consent</b>    | a) agree to   b) sit down   c) listen   d) reward                                      |
| _____ 16. <b>eager</b>      | a) unforgiving   b) best   c) happily excited   d) good-looking                        |
| _____ 17. <b>endure</b>     | a) punish   b) demand   c) put up with   d) confuse                                    |
| _____ 18. <b>exclaim</b>    | a) tell   b) call out   c) show   d) make clear  |
| _____ 19. <b>horizontal</b> | a) careless   b) up and down   c) unexpected   d) extending from side to side          |
| _____ 20. <b>recollect</b>  | a) remember   b) put away   c) agree with   d) put into groups                         |
| _____ 21. <b>adequate</b>   | a) good enough   b) lacking   c) important   d) not needed                             |
| _____ 22. <b>appeal</b>     | a) request   b) give up   c) take away the outer part   d) repeat                      |
| _____ 23. <b>awkward</b>    | a) charming   b) hostile   c) clumsy   d) easily fooled                                |
| _____ 24. <b>customary</b>  | a) commonly done   b) foreign   c) available for sale   d) without value               |
| _____ 25. <b>establish</b>  | a) start   b) knock down   c) flatten   d) say again                                   |

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_ 26. **potential** a) ancestors b) income c) possibility d) preference
- \_\_\_ 27. **respond** a) treat with respect b) mock; treat with scorn c) answer  
d) withhold information
- \_\_\_ 28. **vanish** a) make shiny b) disappear c) make new or youthful d) request
- \_\_\_ 29. **variety** a) opinion b) assortment c) reason d) delay
- \_\_\_ 30. **wholesome** a) healthful b) disgusting c) hard to get d) childlike
- \_\_\_ 31. **brutal** a) generous b) brave c) sympathetic d) cruel
- \_\_\_ 32. **discipline** a) train b) learn c) avoid d) misunderstand
- \_\_\_ 33. **eliminate** a) add to b) get rid of c) make more difficult d) inform
- \_\_\_ 34. **emphasis** a) refusal to speak b) betrayal c) importance d) stubborn act
- \_\_\_ 35. **furthermore** a) without b) at a later point in time c) in addition d) in spite of
- \_\_\_ 36. **interpret** a) confuse b) make an effort c) light from within d) explain
- \_\_\_ 37. **propose** a) persuade b) suggest c) exaggerate d) point out
- \_\_\_ 38. **resort** a) turn (to) for help b) say no to c) hold a grudge d) enable
- \_\_\_ 39. **ultimate** a) least important b) inefficient c) dangerous d) greatest
- \_\_\_ 40. **vague** a) unclear b) shining c) in fashion d) embarrassing
- \_\_\_ 41. **accustomed** a) unused to b) in the habit of c) unable to d) angry at
- \_\_\_ 42. **anticipate** a) expect b) fear c) dislike d) happen later
- \_\_\_ 43. **linger** a) hurry away b) get rid of (something) c) change d) remain
- \_\_\_ 44. **miserable** a) dampened b) youthful c) unhappy d) excited
- \_\_\_ 45. **misinterpret** a) have respect b) prefer c) understand incorrectly d) get rid of
- \_\_\_ 46. **occur** a) disappear b) repeat c) respond d) happen
- \_\_\_ 47. **reluctant** a) unwilling b) eager c) quick-moving d) amused
- \_\_\_ 48. **revise** a) correct and improve b) discard c) copy without giving credit  
d) fail to complete
- \_\_\_ 49. **specific** a) ready b) unpleasantly loud c) exact d) willing
- \_\_\_ 50. **version** a) report based on one point of view b) story reflecting many opinions  
c) inaccurate account d) deliberately malicious story

**SCORE:** (Number correct) \_\_\_\_\_  $\times 2 =$  \_\_\_\_\_ %

# CHAPTER 6

**advise**  
**current**  
**deprive**  
**hesitate**  
**maintain**

**minimum**  
**objection**  
**originate**  
**penalize**  
**reliable**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

- 1 **advise**  
/əd'vaɪz/  
– verb

\_\_\_ Advise means

- I'd like to **advise** Alan to break up with Elaine, but I know he'll get angry if I offer my opinion.
- The park ranger said, "I **advise** you to hang your food from a tree if you don't want the bears to get it."

a. to punish.                      b. to suggest to.                      c. to follow.

- 2 **current**  
/'kʌrənt/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ Current means

- Rita keeps up with fashion and buys the **current** styles, but her sister wears the same basic style, year after year.
- Doctors once suggested total bed rest after surgery. However, **current** practice is to have patients walk as soon as possible after an operation.

a. up-to-date.                      b. little known.                      c. older.

- 3 **deprive**  
/dɪ'praɪv/  
– verb

\_\_\_ Deprive of means

- Isaac's mother **deprives** him of his allowance when he doesn't do his household jobs.
- Dad complains that his low-fat, low-calorie diet **deprives** him of everything he enjoys eating.

a. to keep from.                      b. to offer to.                      c. to protect from.

- 4 **hesitate**  
/'hezɪteɪt/  
– verb

\_\_\_ Hesitate means

- I **hesitated** so long about buying the car that someone else bought it first.
- Rodrigo **hesitated** to ask Julie to marry him. He wasn't sure he was ready to get married.

a. to act quickly.                      b. to be undecided.                      c. to be pleased.

- 5 **maintain**  
/meɪn'teɪn/  
– verb

\_\_\_ Maintain means

- When driving, it's important to **maintain** a safe distance between your car and the car ahead of you.
- My brother must have excellent study skills. He was able to **maintain** a B average throughout college while holding a full-time job.

a. to keep up.                      b. to give up.                      c. to pass up.

- 6 **minimum**  
/'mɪnɪmə/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ Minimum means

- The **minimum** number of people allowed for each bus tour is eight. If fewer people sign up, the trip will be canceled.
- What's the **minimum** price you'll take for your car? I can't afford to pay much.

a. oldest.                      b. biggest.                      c. lowest.

7 **objection**  
/əb'dʒekʃən/  
– noun

- Luz had a strong **objection** to the wallpaper her husband picked out for their living room. “It looks like a doctor’s waiting room,” she complained.
- Granddad had a strong **objection** to boys wearing long hair. Once when my father refused to get a haircut, Granddad cut his hair while he was asleep.

\_\_\_ *Objection* means      a. interest in.      b. memory of.      c. dislike of.

8 **originate**  
/ə'ɹɪdʒəneɪt/  
– verb

- The ice-cream cone **originated** at the 1904 World’s Fair in St. Louis. An ice-cream seller ran out of cups, so he wrapped a waffle around the ice cream and sold it that way.
- Many people believe that baseball **originated** in Cooperstown, New York, in 1839. However, it must have started earlier, since the sport was mentioned in English publications as early as 1744.

\_\_\_ *Originate* means      a. to continue.      b. to begin.      c. to delay.

9 **penalize**  
/'pɪnəlaɪz/  
– verb

- Whenever my parents heard I had been kept after school, they would **penalize** me again at home.
- The judge decided to **penalize** the young thief with one hundred hours of volunteer work.

\_\_\_ *Penalize* means      a. to depend upon.      b. to answer.      c. to punish.

10 **reliable**  
/rɪ'laɪəbl/  
– adjective

- Joe Sherman is a **reliable** mechanic. You can count on him to tell you the truth and to fix whatever is wrong with your car.
- It’s important to me to have a **reliable** baby sitter. I would be very worried if I left my baby with someone I couldn’t depend on to do a careful job.

\_\_\_ *Reliable* means      a. modern.      b. able to be trusted.      c. not expensive.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ A dislike; feeling of being against something; disapproval
2. \_\_\_\_\_ To stop because of not being able to decide; put off acting because of feeling unsure
3. \_\_\_\_\_ To take away from; keep from having or enjoying
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Smallest in size or amount that is allowed or possible; least
5. \_\_\_\_\_ To continue; carry on; keep in existence
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Modern; existing now; in general use or practice today
7. \_\_\_\_\_ To come into being; start
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To punish; cause to suffer for doing something wrong
9. \_\_\_\_\_ To give advice to; recommend
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Able to be depended upon; trustworthy

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don’t need to check the definitions at all.



➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. advise	b. current	c. deprive	d. hesitate	e. maintain
f. minimum	g. objection	h. originate	i. penalize	j. reliable

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A worker who is honest and does his job carefully would be called a \_\_\_\_\_ worker.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. My aunt is not a good patient. She rarely does what her doctor \_\_\_\_\_s her to do.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The opposite of the highest salary the company allows would be its \_\_\_\_\_ salary.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. It used to be more common for teachers to \_\_\_\_\_ students by hitting them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. We can say that the place where a river starts is where it \_\_\_\_\_s.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. We might refer to styles that are widely worn today as \_\_\_\_\_ fashions.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Prisons \_\_\_\_\_ people of much of their freedom.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. I \_\_\_\_\_ to work more than ten hours a week this semester. I have such difficult classes that I may need more time than usual for studying.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. I have an \_\_\_\_\_ to that comedian because his jokes often hurt other people.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. You must keep up a B average to keep your football uniform. In other words, if you don't \_\_\_\_\_ good grades, you're off the team.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. The best way to \_\_\_\_\_ Eric when he does something bad is to \_\_\_\_\_ him of his bicycle for a day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. The girls accepted jobs that paid the \_\_\_\_\_ wage, hoping that they would get raises once they proved they were \_\_\_\_\_ workers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. My doctor has an \_\_\_\_\_ to “crash diets.” Although they cause a quick reduction<sup>o</sup> in weight, they do not help the dieter \_\_\_\_\_ that new, lower weight.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. Keisha likes her hair cut in the most \_\_\_\_\_ style. Her hairdresser \_\_\_\_\_s her about the newest fashionable looks.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. The fox terrier is a dog that \_\_\_\_\_d in England, where fox hunting was popular. It was valued there by hunters because it would not \_\_\_\_\_ to run into a fox's tunnel and drive the animal out.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>maintenance</b> , <i>noun</i>	The work of keeping something in good condition
b. <b>minimize</b> , <i>verb</i>	To reduce as much as possible
c. <b>originally</b> , <i>adverb</i>	In the beginning
d. <b>recur</b> , <i>verb</i>	To happen or appear again
e. <b>rely</b> , <i>verb</i>	To depend

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. While most dreams appear only once, some do \_\_\_\_\_. For example, one young girl dreamed over and over that she was trying to run from danger, but her shoes were slippery.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Proper \_\_\_\_\_ of a car involves regularly changing the oil and the sparkplugs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. To \_\_\_\_\_ the damage from a burn, put the burned area in cold water as soon as possible.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. It's hard to believe these shoes were \_\_\_\_\_ white — now they are gray with dirt.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Richard shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ on his mother so much — he even takes his laundry home for her to wash.

f. <b>adviser</b> , <i>noun</i>	Someone who gives advice or suggestions
g. <b>currently</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Now; at the present time
h. <b>hesitant</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Slow to act; not coming to a decision
i. <b>object</b> , <i>verb</i>	To speak out against
j. <b>penalty</b> , <i>noun</i>	A punishment

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Since the child was faced with thirty flavors of ice cream, it was not surprising that he was \_\_\_\_\_ about which one to choose.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. I am \_\_\_\_\_ enrolled as a full-time student, so I can work only at a part-time job.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. So many people \_\_\_\_\_ed to the idea of a giant weekend rock concert in town that the idea was given up.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The soccer player touched the ball with her hands; as a \_\_\_\_\_, the other team got a free goal kick.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. As I looked for an \_\_\_\_\_ to help me make a difficult decision, I thought about several people whom I like and respect.

## ➤ Word Parts

A. The suffixes *-ance* and *-ence* often mean “the act, state, or quality of.”

**Examples:** *maintain* — to keep in existence  
*maintenance* — the act of keeping  
 in existence

*patient* — willing to put up with something  
*patience* — the quality of being patient

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. **avoidance**

b. **excellence**

c. **dependence**

d. **interference°**

e. **maintenance**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. “I know you mean well,” the woman said to her mother. “But I’m 25 now, and your *act of interfering* in how I do my job is not helpful.”
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. My father’s *state of depending* on caffeine is not healthy for him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Takeo aims for *the quality of being excellent* in everything he does.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The *act of maintaining* of good grades requires a lot of willpower.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Anna’s *act of avoiding* milk is easily explained — she is allergic to it.

B. The prefix *in-* often means “not,” which can change words to their opposites.

**Examples:** *direct* — in a straight line  
*indirect* — not in a straight line

*humane°* — kind  
*inhumane* — not kind

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **incapable**

g. **inconvenient**

h. **indistinct°**

i. **inexpensive**

j. **inhumane**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The fog was so thick that the road signs were \_\_\_\_, and I could barely see them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. I wish there were a grocery store nearby — it is \_\_\_\_ to have to drive all the way across town.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Treatment of elderly patients is sometimes \_\_\_\_\_. Some have been tied down to their chairs and ignored.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The firefighters rescued all the people, but they were \_\_\_\_ of saving the building.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Since we are on a budget, we buy \_\_\_\_ furniture at flea markets. In comparison° with our friends’ new furniture, the old pieces we buy are often of better quality.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Toasters

- |              |             |            |
|--------------|-------------|------------|
| a. current   | b. maintain | c. minimum |
| d. originate | e. reliable |            |

Although the practice of eating toasted bread (1)\_\_\_\_\_d about 4600 years ago, the pop-up electric toaster was not invented until 1919. These early pop-up toasters were not very (2)\_\_\_\_\_ — they broke down often. Also, they weren't able to (3)\_\_\_\_\_ an even temperature but grew hotter and hotter with each piece of bread toasted. Some poor-quality machines even popped the toast all the way across the room. Over the years, toasters have certainly improved. (4)\_\_\_\_\_ ones give us a (5)\_\_\_\_\_ of problems with repairs and temperature control.

### B. A Mean Man

- |              |             |             |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| f. advise    | g. deprive  | h. hesitate |
| i. objection | j. penalize |             |

Mr. Barker says that he has no (6)\_\_\_\_\_ to kids — as long as they don't come into his yard, as long as they don't (7)\_\_\_\_\_ him of peace and quiet, and as long as they don't grow up to be teenagers.

Neighborhood kids say he's the meanest man they ever met. Who can blame them? If he sees them choosing up sides for a ball game in the street, for example, he doesn't (8)\_\_\_\_\_ a minute. He runs right to his window and yells, "You can't do that in front of MY house!" The kids are afraid of him, but they yell back that the street belongs to everybody. "Well, I (9)\_\_\_\_\_ you to watch your step!" he replies. "If any of you kids break my window or step on my flowers, you will be (10)\_\_\_\_\_d." Then he slams his window shut. Maybe a hard life has made Mr. Barker the way he is, but it's hard to have warm feelings for someone so obnoxious°.

# CHAPTER 7

abrupt  
astonish  
classify  
complex  
consent

eager  
endure  
exclaim  
horizontal  
recollect

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

### 1 abrupt

/ə'brʌpt/

— adjective

- Seat belts in cars protect passengers from injuries caused by **abrupt** stops.
- An **abrupt** burst of laughter during the church service surprised everyone.

\_\_\_ *Abrupt* means

- a. silent.                      b. simple.                      c. not expected.

### 2 astonish

/ə'stɒnɪʃ/

— verb

- A magician **astonished** the audience by making seemingly impossible things happen.
- The announcement that the factory was closing forever **astonished** the employees, who had not known their jobs were in danger.

\_\_\_ *Astonish* means

- a. to delay.                      b. to encourage.                      c. to surprise.

### 3 classify

/ˈklæsɪfaɪ/

— verb

- The stamp collector **classified** her stamps by countries — she put all the stamps from France together, all the stamps from Spain together, and so on.
- I was surprised to learn that the sea horse is **classified** by scientists as a fish.

\_\_\_ *Classify* means

- a. to lose.                      b. to group.                      c. to remember.

### 4 complex

/ˈkɒmpleks/

— adjective

- Because income tax forms are so **complex**, many people hire professionals to prepare their tax returns.
- Our family is rather **complex** — it includes many second marriages and stepfamilies. At family reunions we spend a lot of time trying to figure out how we are all related.

\_\_\_ *Complex* means

- a. hard to understand.      b. helpful.                      c. small.

### 5 consent

/kən'sent/

— verb

- Only applicants who **consented** to a drug test were considered for the job.
- Enrique proposed to Anna by putting up a billboard saying, "Will you marry me?" She **consented** with her own sign that said, "Of course I will."

\_\_\_ *Consent* means

- a. to say yes.                      b. to listen.                      c. to disagree.

### 6 eager

/ˈiːgə(r)/

— adjective

- I am always **eager** to read the latest murder story by my favorite mystery writer.
- Our dog is **eager** to greet us when we come home. She jumps up on us and begins licking our hands before the door is even shut.

\_\_\_ *Eager* means

- a. bored.                      b. patient.                      c. happily excited.

**7 endure**/en'dʒʊə(r)/  
– verb

- We'll have to **endure** a few more weeks of cold, gray winter before spring arrives.
- Until someone finds a cure for the common cold, there's not much to do but **endure** the runny noses and sneezes.

\_\_\_ *Endure* means

- a. to enjoy.                      b. to organize.                      c. to live with unwillingly.

**8 exclaim**/ɪk'skleɪm/  
– verb

- “Wow!” “Ooooh!” “Aaah!” the crowd **exclaimed** as the colorful fireworks burst in the sky.
- When a cardinal landed on the bird feeder, the little girl **exclaimed**, “Look! A red blue jay!”

\_\_\_ *Exclaim* means

- a. to remember.                      b. to complain.                      c. to call out.

**9 horizontal**/hɒrɪ'zɒntəl/  
– adjective

- The surgery left a **horizontal** scar that runs from one side of my stomach to the other.
- **Horizontal** stripes on clothing generally make the wearer look wider.

\_\_\_ *Horizontal* means

- a. dirty.                      b. little.                      c. running from side to side.

**10 recollect**/rɪ'kɒlɪkt/  
– verb

- Can you **recollect** much about being in first grade?
- I couldn't **recollect** my sister's phone number, so I had to call the phone company's information number.

\_\_\_ *Recollect* means

- a. to agree with.                      b. to remember.                      c. to arrange.

**Matching Words with Definitions**

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Lying flat; lying or extending from side to side (as opposed to going up and down)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ To put up with; bear patiently
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Looking forward to with great interest or desire
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Not simple; not easy to understand or figure out
5. \_\_\_\_\_ To agree to something
6. \_\_\_\_\_ To speak or cry out suddenly, as from strong feelings or surprise
7. \_\_\_\_\_ To arrange or organize into groups or types; place in a category°
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To remember; bring an image or idea back to mind
9. \_\_\_\_\_ To surprise greatly; amaze
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Sudden and unexpected

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. abrupt	b. astonish	c. classify	d. complex	e. consent
f. eager	g. endure	h. exclaim	i. horizontal	j. recollect

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Sometimes I think I can't \_\_\_\_ one more day of winter, but I know I have to put up with it until spring.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Did you know that scientists \_\_\_\_ the whale as a mammal? Most people think of it as a fish.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Although I remember little about first grade, I \_\_\_\_ my year in third grade very clearly.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The great magician Houdini would \_\_\_\_ audiences by escaping from chains, locked trunks, and even sealed coffins.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The day after Jackie had her waist-length hair cut short, nearly everyone she met \_\_\_\_ed, "Oh! Your hair!"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. A car would probably come to an \_\_\_\_ stop if a dog ran out in front of it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Knowing that she had done well on every test, Phyllis was \_\_\_\_ to see her final grade for the course.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Why must our tax forms be so \_\_\_\_? Why can't the government make them easier to understand?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. It's true that \_\_\_\_ stripes on clothing make you look wider, and stripes that go up and down make you look taller.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. If you won the lottery, would you \_\_\_\_ to having your name and picture printed in the newspaper?

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. In early spring, \_\_\_\_ changes in the weather can \_\_\_\_ everyone. It may be mild and sunny in the morning, then snowing by bedtime.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. I didn't want to have dental surgery, but I decided to \_\_\_\_ to it rather than \_\_\_\_ my toothache any longer. I just want the pain to cease°.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. I am thinking of buying Felix a striped T-shirt for his birthday, but I can't \_\_\_\_ if he likes to wear \_\_\_\_ stripes or stripes that go up and down.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. Scientists \_\_\_\_ animals in a \_\_\_\_ system of groupings, using features such as being warm- or cold-blooded and having feathers or scales.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. My kids are not exactly \_\_\_\_ to go to school; when I wake them every morning, they \_\_\_\_, "Oh, no! Isn't it Saturday yet?"

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>eagerly</b> , <i>adverb</i>	With excitement and impatience
b. <b>eagerness</b> , <i>noun</i>	An impatient desire for something
c. <b>exclamation</b> , <i>noun</i>	A cry or shout of excitement or strong feeling
d. <b>horizon</b> , <i>noun</i>	The level line where earth (or water) and sky seem to meet
e. <b>recollection</b> , <i>noun</i>	A memory

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Ramon fell off his bicycle and was knocked out; later he had no \_\_\_\_ of the accident — he couldn't remember it at all.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Sitting on the front steps, I waited \_\_\_\_ for the mail to arrive; I was expecting a letter from my boyfriend.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. My little daughter was too excited on Christmas morning — in her \_\_\_\_ to see her presents, she tumbled down the stairs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. In the movie, the shipwrecked sailors constantly watched for a rescue ship on the \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. When their rescuers finally appeared, the sailors shouted out a one-word \_\_\_\_: "Saved!"

f. <b>abruptly</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Suddenly; unexpectedly
g. <b>astonishment</b> , <i>noun</i>	Great surprise or amazement
h. <b>classification</b> , <i>noun</i>	A group or division
i. <b>complexity</b> , <i>noun</i>	The quality of being detailed and hard to understand
j. <b>endurance</b> , <i>noun</i>	The ability to bear a hardship

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Distance runners need to have not only strength and speed, but also \_\_\_\_, to keep on going with pain and thirst for so many miles.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Tomatoes belong to the \_\_\_\_ of fruits, not the category° of vegetables.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The \_\_\_\_ of the subject makes my chemistry course difficult, but it is also very interesting. Since I want to maintain° a good grade-point average, I'll have to study hard.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Heidi's boyfriend took her by surprise when he \_\_\_\_ asked her to marry him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. When Heidi told us about the engagement, she said, "Imagine my \_\_\_\_! He always said he wasn't the marrying kind."



## ➤ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. **abrupt**

- a. expected
- c. sudden

- b. delayed
- d. polite

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. **astonish**

- a. borrow
- c. allow

- b. request
- d. surprise

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. **classify**

- a. set aside for later
- c. decide the value

- b. have no use for
- d. organize into groups

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. **endure**

- a. bear up under
- c. agree

- b. remember
- d. deny

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. **exclaim**

- a. tell
- c. notice

- b. call out
- d. bear

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. **complex**

- a. simple
- c. interesting

- b. true
- d. wise

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. **consent**

- a. try
- c. begin

- b. disagree
- d. practice

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. **eager**

- a. unsteady
- c. expected

- b. perfect
- d. not interested

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. **horizontal**

- a. in a circle
- c. straight up and down

- b. lying at a slant
- d. outside

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. **recollect**

- a. forget
- c. plan

- b. forgive
- d. wonder

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. A Special Memory

a. **astonish**  
d. **horizontal**

b. **consent**  
e. **recollect**

c. **eager**

Tony and I often did things without asking our mom to (1)\_\_\_\_\_ to our activities — because she probably wouldn't. Besides, we loved secret projects. One summer we built a treehouse hidden among some tall trees on Mr. Leary's lot. The window was crooked, and the floor wasn't exactly (2)\_\_\_\_\_, although the tilt wasn't too bad. We took Mom's ladder to use as our stairs and decorated the place with an old rug and some pillows.

One day we heard Mom yelling up to us, "So that's where my ladder went!" Then she told us that Mr. Leary had called to say that the treehouse had to come down. "You could fall and get hurt," she explained, "and he doesn't want to get sued — and he's right. That treehouse is dangerous. I advise° you to come down from there right now."

But that night, (3)\_\_\_\_\_ to spend one last hour there, Tony and I sneaked out and headed for the treehouse. As we got near it, we were (4)\_\_\_\_\_ed to see a candle glowing in the crooked window, so we climbed up very quietly and peeked in. I can still (5)\_\_\_\_\_ the scene clearly. There was Mom, sitting on one of our pillows, smiling. Next to her were a pitcher of lemonade and three glasses. "It's about time you got here," she said. "What took you so long?"

### B. Watch Your Manners!

f. **abrupt**  
i. **endure**

g. **classify**  
j. **exclaim**

h. **complex**

Most of us think we know how to be polite. But some things that Americans (6)\_\_\_\_\_ as good manners may seem rude in other parts of the world. Every culture has its own (7)\_\_\_\_\_ set of rules about what is and isn't acceptable.

For example, an American who went to a birthday party in Japan brought the fun to an (8)\_\_\_\_\_ end by giving a clock as a present. In Japan, giving anyone a clock is a way of saying "I hope your time is running out" — in other words, "I hope you die soon." Also, Americans in China are seen as bad-tempered when they (9)\_\_\_\_\_ something loudly, out of excitement or to make a point. In China, a loud voice is a sign of strong anger.

Of course, foreign visitors to the United States can also misunderstand our ways. For instance, one Arab who was a guest at a banquet in Washington later complained, "I didn't get a thing to eat." It turned out he had said, "No, thank you," each time he was offered food. In his country, it was good manners to refuse food several times before accepting it. His American hosts didn't know that, so they just let the poor fellow (10)\_\_\_\_\_ his hunger.

# CHAPTER 8

adequate  
appeal  
awkward  
customary  
establish

potential  
respond  
vanish  
variety  
wholesome

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

- 1 **adequate**  
/ˈædɪkwət/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ Adequate means

- When I didn't have time to wash the windows, I hired a neighbor's child to do it. He did an **adequate** job — not perfect, but good enough.
- Open sandals are not **adequate** footwear for factory work. You should wear heavy shoes to protect your feet.

a. OK.                      b. poor.                      c. popular.

- 2 **appeal**  
/əˈpi:l/  
— verb

\_\_\_ Appeal means

- Every year, Jerry Lewis goes on TV to **appeal** to viewers for money to help people with the illness muscular dystrophy.
- When police can't solve a crime, they sometimes **appeal** to the public for help.

a. to answer.                      b. to run.                      c. to make a request.

- 3 **awkward**  
/ˈɔ:kwəd/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ Awkward means

- When I was 13, I was very **awkward**. My feet seemed too big, and I was always tripping over things.
- Rico is such an **awkward** dancer that he constantly steps on his partner's feet.

a. not strong.                      b. not graceful.                      c. kind.

- 4 **customary**  
/ˈkʌstəməri/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ Customary means

- In some towns, it's **customary** for the "Welcome Wagon" to visit newcomers and tell them about the town.
- Americans usually eat their big meal in the evening. In Ireland, however, it is **customary** to eat a big dinner in the afternoon and a light meal at night.

a. not polite.                      b. normal.                      c. rare.

- 5 **establish**  
/ɪˈstæblɪʃ/  
— verb

\_\_\_ Establish means

- The first lending library was **established** in Scotland in 1725.
- The first movie theater in the United States was **established** in New Orleans in 1896.

a. to leave.                      b. to stop.                      c. to start.

- 6 **potential**  
/pəˈtential/  
— noun

\_\_\_ Potential means

- My grandmother had the **potential** to be a great teacher, but she couldn't afford to go to college.
- Everyone agrees that Carlos has the **potential** of being a major league baseball player. To become that good, he must continue to work hard.

a. request.                      b. memory.                      c. ability.

7 **respond**  
/rɪ'spɒnd/  
– verb

- You asked me a question, so why don't you stop talking for a minute so that I can **respond**?
- The group of men whistled and called out to Kim as she walked by, but she didn't **respond** at all. She simply kept walking.

\_\_\_ *Respond* means

- a. to reply.                      b. to repeat.                      c. to leave.

8 **vanish**  
/'væniʃ/  
– verb

- The magician made the rabbit **vanish** by slipping it under a secret door.
- You gave a stranger \$500 in cash to paint your house? How do you know he won't **vanish** with the money?

\_\_\_ *Vanish* means

- a. to answer.                      b. to begin.                      c. to go out of sight.

9 **variety**  
/və'raɪəti/  
– noun

- In the spring, the woods contain a **variety** of wildflowers, including bluebells, daffodils, and violets.
- Instead of being a **variety** of colors, all of Gale's clothes were lavender or purple.

\_\_\_ *Variety* means

- a. mixture.                      b. absence.                      c. shade.

10 **wholesome**  
/'həʊlsəm/  
– adjective

- Ken used to spend hours in a smoky video arcade where drug dealers hung out, but now he prefers more **wholesome** activities, like sports and music.
- We now know smoking is not **wholesome**, but early cigarette ads claimed physical and mental benefits for smokers.

\_\_\_ *Wholesome* means

- a. obvious.                      b. expensive.                      c. healthy.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ To bring into being; set up
2. \_\_\_\_\_ To make an important request (to someone for something)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ A number of different kinds; assortment
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Tending to improve the character, the mind, or the body
5. \_\_\_\_\_ To answer, either by word or by action
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Good enough (to meet the need)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Usual; commonly done
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To disappear from sight
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Clumsy; not graceful
10. \_\_\_\_\_ A natural ability that may or may not develop; possibility

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. adequate	b. appeal	c. awkward	d. customary	e. establish
f. potential	g. respond	h. vanish	i. variety	j. wholesome

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. An acorn has the \_\_\_\_ to be an oak tree.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. I looked everywhere for my car keys, but they seem to have \_\_\_\_ed into thin air.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Rodney has worked in a \_\_\_\_ of positions, including trucker, carpenter, and rancher.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The signs the children put up on telephone poles \_\_\_\_ed to people to help find their lost cat.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Starting a day with exercise is more \_\_\_\_ than starting the day with a cigarette.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. I'd love a huge apartment, but this small one is \_\_\_\_; it serves my needs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The American Girl Scouts were \_\_\_\_ed in 1912.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. People's habits can be referred to as their \_\_\_\_ behavior.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. When asked a question, we usually \_\_\_\_, even if it's only to say, "I don't know."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. On land, crocodiles seem slow and \_\_\_\_, but once in the water they are fast and graceful swimmers.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. Parents were happy when the Youth Club was \_\_\_\_ed in town because it gave their kids a \_\_\_\_ place to go, have fun, and meet their friends.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. The \_\_\_\_ of fruits and vegetables at Fresh Foods is \_\_\_\_, but not as good as the selection at Grocery Giant.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. A talent agent \_\_\_\_ed to Christi's parents to let her appear in commercials. He thought Christi had the \_\_\_\_ of being a very good model and making a lot of money. However, her parents had an objection<sup>o</sup> to letting a ten-year-old work.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. In my dream, an old woman says, "Hurry! Come with me!" But I never go with her — she \_\_\_\_es before I have a chance to \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. It is \_\_\_\_ for people to bow to one another in Japan. When Fred visited that country he bowed too, even though he felt \_\_\_\_ doing it.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>customarily</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Usually
b. <b>establishment</b> , <i>noun</i>	A business
c. <b>response</b> , <i>noun</i>	An answer
d. <b>unwholesome</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Having a bad effect on health or character
e. <b>various</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Several; of different kinds

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. One of the oldest \_\_\_\_s in the city is the Red Lion Inn, which was built in 1835.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Letty's parents are afraid that her older boyfriend, who has been in trouble with the law, is an \_\_\_\_ influence on her.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When we asked the crying child what was the matter, her only \_\_\_\_ was to cry louder.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Quaker religious services \_\_\_\_ take place in silence.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. We tried \_\_\_\_ ways to get rid of the mice in our house, including traps, poison, and a cat.

f. <b>responsive</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Reacting in a positive way
g. <b>custom</b> , <i>noun</i>	A habit
h. <b>inadequate</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not good enough
i. <b>potentially</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Possibly; able to happen
j. <b>re-establish</b> , <i>verb</i>	To set up again

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. It is natural to feel \_\_\_\_ on the first days of a new job — there is so much to learn!
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The teacher was not \_\_\_\_ to the students' suggestion that the test be canceled.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. A loaded gun in the same house with curious children creates a \_\_\_\_ deadly situation — an accident could easily happen.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. It is my grandfather's \_\_\_\_ to walk three miles each morning before breakfast.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. After years of being out of touch, Dad and his brother have \_\_\_\_ed their friendship.

## ➤ Word Parts

A. The prefix *re-* often mean “again.”

**Examples:** *utilize*° — to make use of  
*reutilize* — to make use of again

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

a. <b>reanalyze</b> °	b. <b>re-establish</b>	c. <b>reheat</b>
d. <b>relearn</b>	e. <b>reutilize</b> °	

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. When I get home late from work, I usually find some leftovers that I can \_\_\_\_ for dinner.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. It is easier to \_\_\_\_ something you once knew and forgot than to learn something for the first time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Mr. Amin did not give up when a highway was built where his store had once been. He decided to \_\_\_\_ his business in another part of town.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. After finishing a difficult math problem, I often \_\_\_\_ it, just to be sure I have the correct answer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. After I empty plastic bags from the supermarket, I \_\_\_\_ them. I may use them as storage bags or even bring them back to the supermarket to use there again.

B. The prefix *un-* often means “not.” It can change words to their opposites.

**Examples:** *intentional*° — done on purpose      *stable* — steady  
*unintentional* — not done on purpose; done by accident      *unstable*° — not steady

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. <b>unintentional</b> °	g. <b>uninterested</b>	h. <b>unlucky</b>
i. <b>unstable</b> °	j. <b>unwholesome</b>	

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Most dogs are \_\_\_\_ in vegetables.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Many people eat an \_\_\_\_ diet, filled with fried foods, fatty meats, and sugar, and lacking in vegetables and grains.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. “Oh, I’m sorry,” said the man who bumped into me. “That was \_\_\_\_.”
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. So many people believe that the number thirteen is \_\_\_\_ that some hotels won’t give a room that number.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Our strangely shaped dining-room chairs are so \_\_\_\_ that several people have fallen out of them.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Big Brothers and Sisters

a. appeal

b. establish

c. potential

d. variety

e. wholesome

This week, the local Big Brother/Big Sister Agency (1)\_\_\_\_\_ed to the community for volunteers. The organization is looking for men and women who are willing to (2)\_\_\_\_\_ a new friendship with a young boy or girl from a single-parent home. The only thing required for becoming a volunteer is the desire to become friends with the children, to help them to stay in school, and to choose (3)\_\_\_\_\_ activities that will keep them out of trouble. Volunteers can do a (4)\_\_\_\_\_ of things with their little “brothers” or “sisters,” such as taking them to the park or going out to eat. Whatever activities they choose, volunteers will play an important part in the children’s lives, helping them to build their (5)\_\_\_\_\_ to live full lives and become good citizens.

### B. Kevin’s First Date

f. adequate

g. awkward

h. customary

i. respond

j. vanish

If you ask Kevin what the most embarrassing time of his life was, he will surely tell you about his first date, for a ninth-grade dance. He was so afraid of rejection° when he asked the girl to go with him that he almost didn’t notice when she consented° to be his date.

The day of the dance was no better. Between the time he rang her doorbell and the time her father answered, he forgot his date’s name — completely. He mumbled something about school (he did remember the school’s name), and the girl’s father let him in. The man then shot some questions at Kevin, to make sure he was an (6)\_\_\_\_\_ date for his darling daughter. Kevin could barely (7)\_\_\_\_\_ to the questions because his nervous thirteen-year-old voice squeaked and cracked so much.

Since it was (8)\_\_\_\_\_ for boys to bring flowers on this special occasion, Kevin had done so. But when his date came down the stairs in a thin-strapped pink dress and he opened the florist’s box, he became even more nervous. Inside was an excessively° large flower in a bright orange color that didn’t go at all with the pink dress. As he pinned the giant blossom onto the gown, he made an (9)\_\_\_\_\_ movement, stuck his finger, and bled — on the dress. The girl was so astonished° that her mouth fell open. He wanted to (10)\_\_\_\_\_ from the face of the earth and never be seen again. He even considered transferring to another school. As it was, he developed such a poor attitude° about dating that he didn’t ask another girl out for the next two years.



# CHAPTER 9

**brutal**  
**discipline**  
**eliminate**  
**emphasis**  
**furthermore**

**interpret**  
**propose**  
**resort**  
**ultimate**  
**vague**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

- 1 **brutal**  
/ˈbru:təl/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Brutal* means

- Brenda's first husband was **brutal**. When he beat her for the third time, she finally left him.
  - Troy's mother never hit him, but she was **brutal**. Her cruel words were more painful than any beating could have been.
- a. youthful.                      b. hardly ever seen.                      c. mean.

- 2 **discipline**  
/ˈdɪsɪplɪn/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Discipline* means

- The ballplayer was put out of the game for hitting an umpire. He was also **disciplined** with a \$2,000 fine.
  - José wanted to teach his children to be nonviolent, so he **disciplined** them in gentle ways, such as sending them to their rooms for some quiet "time out."
- a. to punish.                      b. to leave.                      c. to turn to for help.

- 3 **eliminate**  
/ɪˈlɪmɪneɪt/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Eliminate* means

- If you hang up clothes right after the dryer stops, you can **eliminate** the need to iron many items.
  - Because my father has high blood pressure, he's supposed to **eliminate** salt from his diet.
- a. to add to.                      b. to remove.                      c. to repeat.

- 4 **emphasis**  
/ˈemfəˌsɪs/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Emphasis* means

- Brad's father placed a lot of **emphasis** on doing well in sports but gave little attention to doing well in school.
  - In my Spanish class, too much **emphasis** was given to reading and not enough to speaking.
- a. delay.                      b. addition.                      c. importance.

- 5 **furthermore**  
/ˈfɜːðəˌmɔː(r)/  
– adverb

\_\_\_ *Furthermore* means

- "I don't believe your story about a flat tire," said Hal's boss. "And **furthermore**, I haven't believed any of your other excuses for being late."
  - The Bulls will win because they are a talented team. **Furthermore**, they are coached well.
- a. instead.                      b. later.                      c. also.

- 6 **interpret**  
/ɪnˈtɜːprɪt/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Interpret* means

- After Ray had a dental x-ray, the dentist sat down with him to **interpret** it.
  - How should I **interpret** the fact that, although we were friendly yesterday, Jean refused to speak to me today?
- a. to explain.                      b. to suggest.                      c. to discover.

7 **propose**  
/prəʊˈpəʊz/  
– verb

- Our little brother **proposed** buying our parents a puppy for Christmas, but instead we gave them a coffee grinder.
- Rafael was obviously too tired to study, so his mother **proposed** that he take a nap and get back to work later.

\_\_\_ *Propose* means

- a. to predict.                      b. to remember.                      c. to suggest.

8 **resort**  
/rɪˈzɔ:t/  
– verb

- Once my friend was so low on money that he **resorted** to selling his blood to a blood bank.
- Although school was hard for me, I never **resorted** to cheating.

\_\_\_ *Resort to* means

- a. to explain.                      b. to forget about.                      c. to turn to.

9 **ultimate**  
/ˈʌltɪmət/  
– adjective

- Although they have reached some understandings, the **ultimate** goal of the conference is to sign an international arms-control agreement.
- Saying they learned a lot in class is the **ultimate** compliment students can pay a teacher.

\_\_\_ *Ultimate* means

- a. greatest.                      b. most interesting.                      c. unknown.

10 **vague**  
/veɪg/  
– adjective

- On the essay test, give detailed answers, not **vague** ones.
- Ben had only a **vague** idea of what yeast was. He knew it was used to make beer and bread, but he wasn't sure what it did.

\_\_\_ *Vague* means

- a. general.                      b. curious.                      c. wrong.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Not clear; not exact; not definite
- \_\_\_\_\_ To put forward for thinking over or accepting; suggest (an idea)
- \_\_\_\_\_ To punish; cause to suffer for doing something wrong
- \_\_\_\_\_ To turn or go (to) for help; make use of aid
- \_\_\_\_\_ Cruel; heartless
- \_\_\_\_\_ Special attention; importance given to something
- \_\_\_\_\_ In addition; besides
- \_\_\_\_\_ To get rid of; do away with
- \_\_\_\_\_ To explain the meaning of; make sense of
- \_\_\_\_\_ Greatest; highest possible

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. brutal	b. discipline	c. eliminate	d. emphasis	e. furthermore
f. interpret	g. propose	h. resort	i. ultimate	j. vague

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Ms. Ramirez took her son's bike away for a week to \_\_\_\_ him after he lied to her.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Your \_\_\_\_ goal is the highest one you hope to reach.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. If you were low on cash, would you \_\_\_\_ to selling your blood?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. When I ask my children where they're going, I don't accept \_\_\_\_ answers. I want to know exactly where they'll be.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Since I didn't understand the results of my blood test, the doctor \_\_\_\_ed it for me.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. We encourage our children to \_\_\_\_ weekend activities in which the whole family can participate.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. People take aspirin to \_\_\_\_ headaches.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. One way to introduce an additional point is with the word "\_\_\_\_."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Your boss will put the greatest \_\_\_\_ on the project he or she considers most important.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Someone without mercy can be \_\_\_\_.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. "Your answers were too \_\_\_\_," said the teacher. "You should have made them more clear by adding details. \_\_\_\_, you skipped several questions."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. Even though there are plenty of gentle ways to \_\_\_\_ a child, many parents are quick to \_\_\_\_ to spanking when a child behaves badly. Many parents need to learn how to penalize<sup>o</sup> their children in positive ways.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. Liz has cut down her smoking to only three cigarettes a day, but her \_\_\_\_ goal is to \_\_\_\_ smoking from her life.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. Chu's parents had never seen an American-style report card before, so when Chu's teacher met with them, her \_\_\_\_ was on helping them \_\_\_\_ what it said.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. Gail \_\_\_\_d that we go to the movies instead of attending a boxing match because she feels that boxing is a \_\_\_\_ sport.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>brutality</b> , <i>noun</i>	Cruelty
b. <b>emphasize</b> , <i>verb</i>	To give special force to; stress
c. <b>interpreter</b> , <i>noun</i>	Someone who translates one language into another
d. <b>ultimately</b> , <i>adverb</i>	In the end; finally
e. <b>vagueness</b> , <i>noun</i>	The condition of not being clear

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The instructions in this beginners' cookbook \_\_\_\_ measuring ingredients carefully.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The Humane<sup>o</sup> Society came to check on Mr. Speck when neighbors reported his \_\_\_\_ to his dogs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Marcos worked hard as a roofer for ten years, saved his money, and \_\_\_\_ started his own roofing business.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Because Julie speaks English and Vietnamese equally well, she often serves as an \_\_\_\_ for her parents and customers in their restaurant.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The memory of an event when I was three years old has the \_\_\_\_ of a hardly remembered dream.

a. <b>brute</b> , <i>noun</i>	A cruel person
b. <b>disciplinary</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Having to do with teaching a lesson or punishing
c. <b>elimination</b> , <i>noun</i>	The getting rid of something
d. <b>proposal</b> , <i>noun</i>	An idea; suggestion
e. <b>vaguely</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Not clearly

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. No one liked Dad's \_\_\_\_ that we spend our vacation at home painting the house.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The vice-principal at our school is in charge of \_\_\_\_ matters, such as deciding if a student should be suspended.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The police chief said, "We will find the \_\_\_\_s who beat this poor teenager to death."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The Salk vaccine, developed in the 1950s, led to the \_\_\_\_ of polio in many parts of the world.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Sidney looks like his brother only \_\_\_\_\_. They're about the same size, and there is something similar about their mouths and eyes.

## ➤ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. **emphasis**

- a. flavor
- c. laughter

- b. memory
- d. importance

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. **furthermore**

- a. on the other hand
- c. also

- b. for instance
- d. instead

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. **interpret**

- a. punish
- c. resist

- b. memorize
- d. explain

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. **propose**

- a. suggest
- c. lie

- b. deny
- d. pretend

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. **resort to**

- a. turn to
- c. suggest

- b. avoid
- d. talk about

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. **brutal**

- a. firm
- c. quiet

- b. kindly
- d. small

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. **discipline**

- a. greet
- c. reward

- b. interrupt
- d. drop

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. **eliminate**

- a. ignore
- c. refuse

- b. hang around
- d. add

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. **ultimate**

- a. least possible
- c. clear

- b. most difficult
- d. medium

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. **vague**

- a. needed
- c. trusted

- b. exact
- d. loud

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Differences in a Gym Program

a. **emphasis**  
d. **ultimate**

b. **interpret**  
e. **vague**

c. **propose**

Last spring, some parents spoke to the school board about the gym program at Walnut Street School. The parents protested the difference in programs offered to boys and girls. The boys were taught a variety° of active sports and given good equipment. They had the chance to join several teams. For girls, however, the (1)\_\_\_\_\_ in gym was on dancing and exercise. They had no teams and little equipment.

Why were there such big differences between the two programs? The school district's rules about physical education were (2)\_\_\_\_\_. Since they didn't say exactly what should be taught, each school (3)\_\_\_\_\_ed the rules in its own way.

The parents (4)\_\_\_\_\_d allowing both boys and girls to use all the gym equipment at the school. And they appealed° to the school board for some sports teams to be organized for the girls. They pointed out that girls have as much potential° in sports and as much need for physical fitness as boys do. Their (5) \_\_\_\_\_ goal was to give all the children an equal gym experience.

### B. Teaching a Lesson

f. **brutal**  
i. **furthermore**

g. **discipline**  
j. **resort**

h. **eliminate**

One reason that parents may have to (6)\_\_\_\_\_ children is to (7)\_\_\_\_\_ behaviors that are rude or hurtful. Unfortunately, some parents use (8)\_\_\_\_\_ punishments to teach their children to be good. But cruel treatment only serves to demonstrate° to children that it is acceptable for them to (9)\_\_\_\_\_ to hitting and punching when they need to solve a problem. (10)\_\_\_\_\_, children who are hit too often and too hard are deprived° of a feeling of safety. They grow up expecting that the whole world will be cruel to them, and thus, they often become cruel to others.

# CHAPTER 10

**accustomed**  
**anticipate**  
**linger**  
**miserable**  
**misinterpret**

**occur**  
**reluctant**  
**revise**  
**specific**  
**version**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

**1 accustomed**

/ə'kʌstəmd/  
– adjective

- Although my grandfather was **accustomed** to sucking a sugar cube while he drank tea, the sugar never seemed to harm his teeth.
- After years of living in sunny Puerto Rico, Alma had trouble becoming **accustomed** to the snowy Minnesota weather.

\_\_\_ *Accustomed* means

- a. uncomfortable with.      b. shocked by.      c. used to.

**2 anticipate**

/æn'tɪsɪpeɪt/  
– verb

- Lee **anticipated** heavy traffic this morning, so he left for the airport an hour early.
- Because I **anticipated** a snowstorm, I bought extra groceries in case I couldn't get to the store for several days.

\_\_\_ *Anticipate* means

- a. to doubt.      b. to enjoy.      c. to think likely to happen.

**3 linger**

/ˈlɪŋɡə(r)/  
– verb

- My husband has difficulty leaving any social event. He likes to **linger** by the door, chatting on and on with our hosts.
- After the bowling matches are over, we usually **linger** for a while to talk to our friends on the other teams.

\_\_\_ *Linger* means

- a. to stare.      b. to stay.      c. to expect.

**4 miserable**

/ˈmɪzərəbl/  
– adjective

- The Farrells were **miserable** on their camping trip because the green flies wouldn't stop biting them for a minute.
- Gino is sure to be **miserable** during the allergy season if he doesn't get shots.

\_\_\_ *Miserable* means

- a. uncomfortable.      b. not proper.      c. rested.

**5 misinterpret**

/mɪsɪn'tɜːprɪt/  
– verb

- When I invited my new neighbor to dinner, she **misinterpreted** my neighborliness as romantic interest.
- It's clear that Jay **misinterpreted** his wife's request. He brought her flowers for a vase instead of flour for a cake.

\_\_\_ *Misinterpret* means

- a. to want.      b. to cause.      c. to understand wrongly.

**6 occur**

/ə'kʊː(r)/  
– verb

- A robbery **occurred** at the restaurant just minutes after we left.
- The first moonwalk **occurred** on July 20th, 1969, after Neil Armstrong stepped on the moon and said, "That's one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind."

\_\_\_ *Occur* means

- a. to find.      b. to disappear.      c. to happen.

- 7 **reluctant**  
/rɪˈlʌktənt/  
– *adjective*
- \_\_\_\_ *Reluctant* means
- Since I'm **reluctant** to have people know my phone number, I keep it unlisted.
  - Although the lawyer was **reluctant** to tell his client such disappointing news, he had no choice but to do so.
- a. known.                      b. unwilling.                      c. excited.
- 8 **revise**  
/rɪˈvaɪz/  
– *verb*
- \_\_\_\_ *Revise* means
- Don't just write a paper out once and hand it in. It's important to **revise** what you write until your paper is in good shape.
  - Recent price increases for lumber have made it necessary for carpenters to **revise** their construction charges.
- a. to remember.                      b. to make changes in.                      c. to read again.
- 9 **specific**  
/spəˈsɪfɪk/  
– *adjective*
- \_\_\_\_ *Specific* means
- Gina said that she and Howard had some sort of quarrel, but she didn't give me any **specific** information.
  - I give very **specific** instructions to new baby sitters so they'll understand exactly what I want done. I even show exactly how to diaper and feed my son.
- a. hard to believe.                      b. hurried.                      c. detailed.
- 10 **version**  
/ˈvɜːʃən/  
– *noun*
- \_\_\_\_ *Version* means
- The play *West Side Story* is a modern musical **version** of Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet*.
  - There have been at least six movies about Frankenstein's monster, but the best is still the 1931 **version**, with Boris Karloff.
- a. retelling.                      b. suggestion.                      c. correction.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ In the habit of; used to
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Unwilling; wanting not to do something
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Definite; exact
4. \_\_\_\_\_ To delay leaving; remain, especially as if unwilling to leave
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Very unhappy or uncomfortable
6. \_\_\_\_\_ To expect; foresee
7. \_\_\_\_\_ To understand incorrectly
8. \_\_\_\_\_ A story told in a different form or with a different point of view
9. \_\_\_\_\_ To happen; take place
10. \_\_\_\_\_ To change in order to improve or to include new information

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.



➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. accustomed	b. anticipate	c. linger	d. miserable	e. misinterpret
f. occur	g. reluctant	h. revise	i. specific	j. version

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Could you \_\_\_\_ for a few minutes after the meeting so I can talk privately to you?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. I \_\_\_\_ about forty guests at our New Year's Eve party, but I'm preparing food for fifty, just in case.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. It's about time the city put up a stop sign at that corner — an accident \_\_\_\_s there every month or two.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Although the apartment met our needs, we were \_\_\_\_ to sign a long-term lease.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Dina wrote a \_\_\_\_ of *Romeo and Juliet* that has a happy ending.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Because Clark's directions were so \_\_\_\_, I found his new home without difficulty.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. After our cat was run over by a car, my son felt \_\_\_\_ for weeks.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. For someone brought up in a warm climate, it may take time to become \_\_\_\_ to cold weather.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Another word for "misunderstand" is "\_\_\_\_."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Before we present our play to the third-grade class, we will \_\_\_\_ it so it is easier for young children to understand.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. When I was in Mexico, I became \_\_\_\_ to having people \_\_\_\_ what I said because I speak Spanish so poorly.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. I \_\_\_\_d having an boring afternoon at work, so I \_\_\_\_ed in the restaurant to make lunch last as long as possible. I was not at all eager° to return to the office.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. My son asked for *The Wizard of Oz* for his birthday, but he wasn't \_\_\_\_ about whether he wanted the book or the musical film \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. No one hates arguments more than Martin — he becomes \_\_\_\_ whenever they \_\_\_\_\_. Unfortunately, in his household, disputes° are abundant°.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. I am \_\_\_\_ to show you my story until I've had a chance to \_\_\_\_ it. It really needs considerable° changing before it will be good enough for anyone to read.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>accustom</b> , <i>verb</i>	To get used to
b. <b>anticipation</b> , <i>noun</i>	The act of looking forward to something
c. <b>interpret</b> , <i>verb</i>	To explain the meaning (of something)
d. <b>misery</b> , <i>noun</i>	Great unhappiness
e. <b>revision</b> , <i>noun</i>	An improved form of an earlier work

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. It is sad to think of how much \_\_\_\_\_ wars have caused.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The dog's \_\_\_\_\_ of going for a walk was clear — he sat by the door with a leash in his mouth.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. I didn't understand what my blood-pressure numbers meant, so I asked the nurse to \_\_\_\_\_ them for me.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. In his job as a security guard, James had to \_\_\_\_\_ himself to staying awake all night.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. My writing teacher kept asking me to improve my paper. She finally accepted the third \_\_\_\_\_.

f. <b>interpretation</b> , <i>noun</i>	An explanation of the meaning or importance of something
g. <b>lingering</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Remaining; not leaving
h. <b>occurrence</b> , <i>noun</i>	An event; something that happened
i. <b>reluctance</b> , <i>noun</i>	The state of being unwilling to do something
j. <b>specify</b> , <i>verb</i>	To state exactly or in detail

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. In the personal ads, people looking for dates \_\_\_\_\_ their work, hobbies, and favorite activities.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. There was a strange \_\_\_\_\_ at school today involving two students, a banana peel, and a can of red paint.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. I understand Dad's \_\_\_\_\_ to ride roller coasters — I don't like to ride on them, either.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. When Jack didn't show up at Emma's party, Emma's \_\_\_\_\_ was that he didn't want to run into his former girlfriend there.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The room was empty when I arrived, but the \_\_\_\_\_ smell of perfume told me that a woman had just left.

## ➤ Analogies

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. RELUCTANT : WILLING ::

- a. brutal : kind
- c. anger : argument

- b. rapid : fast
- d. shy : quiet

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. MISERABLE : HAPPY ::

- a. awkward° : clumsy
- c. current° : old-fashioned

- b. bright : shining
- d. famous : brave

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. LINGER : REMAIN ::

- a. purposely : accidentally
- c. fix : repair

- b. complex° : simple
- d. wait : depart

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. ANTICIPATE : EXPECT ::

- a. recollect° : forget
- c. explain : understand

- b. cause : effect
- d. smash : break

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. SPECIFIC : GENERAL ::

- a. unfamiliar : nervous
- c. shy : quiet

- b. eager° : unwilling
- d. bees : honey

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. OCCUR : HAPPEN ::

- a. run : walk
- c. shout : whisper

- b. vanish° : disappear
- d. vague° : specific°

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. REVISE : SENTENCE ::

- a. discipline° : punishment
- c. sing : book

- b. write : print
- d. propose° : suggestion

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. OBJECTION° : APPROVAL ::

- a. doctor : illness
- c. emphasis : importance

- b. night : moon
- d. argument : agreement

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. MISINTERPRET : MISUNDERSTAND ::

- a. penalize° : punish
- c. agree : disagree

- b. expect : surprise
- d. discipline° : reward

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. RECOLLECT° : EVENT ::

- a. question : answer
- c. walk : exercise

- b. interpret° : message
- d. establish° : destroy

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Knowing How to Argue

- |              |                 |          |
|--------------|-----------------|----------|
| a. linger    | b. misinterpret | c. occur |
| d. reluctant | e. specific     |          |

Ron and Marlene have a great marriage, and I think one reason is that they know how to argue. Many couples think arguing is bad, but I think they (1) \_\_\_\_\_ what arguing really is. It can be a good way to settle problems. When couples are (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to argue, they may not solve their problems, and their angry feelings can (3) \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time. Ron and Marlene don't hesitate° to argue and get it over with. What's good about the way they argue is that they talk only about the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ thing that made them angry. For example, if Marlene is angry that Ron isn't doing his share of the housework, that is all she talks about. She doesn't throw in, "And furthermore° — that new friend of yours from work is a jerk!" Knowing Ron and Marlene has taught me that arguments (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in even the best marriages, and that they can make a good relationship stronger.

### B. A Change of School, A Change of Heart

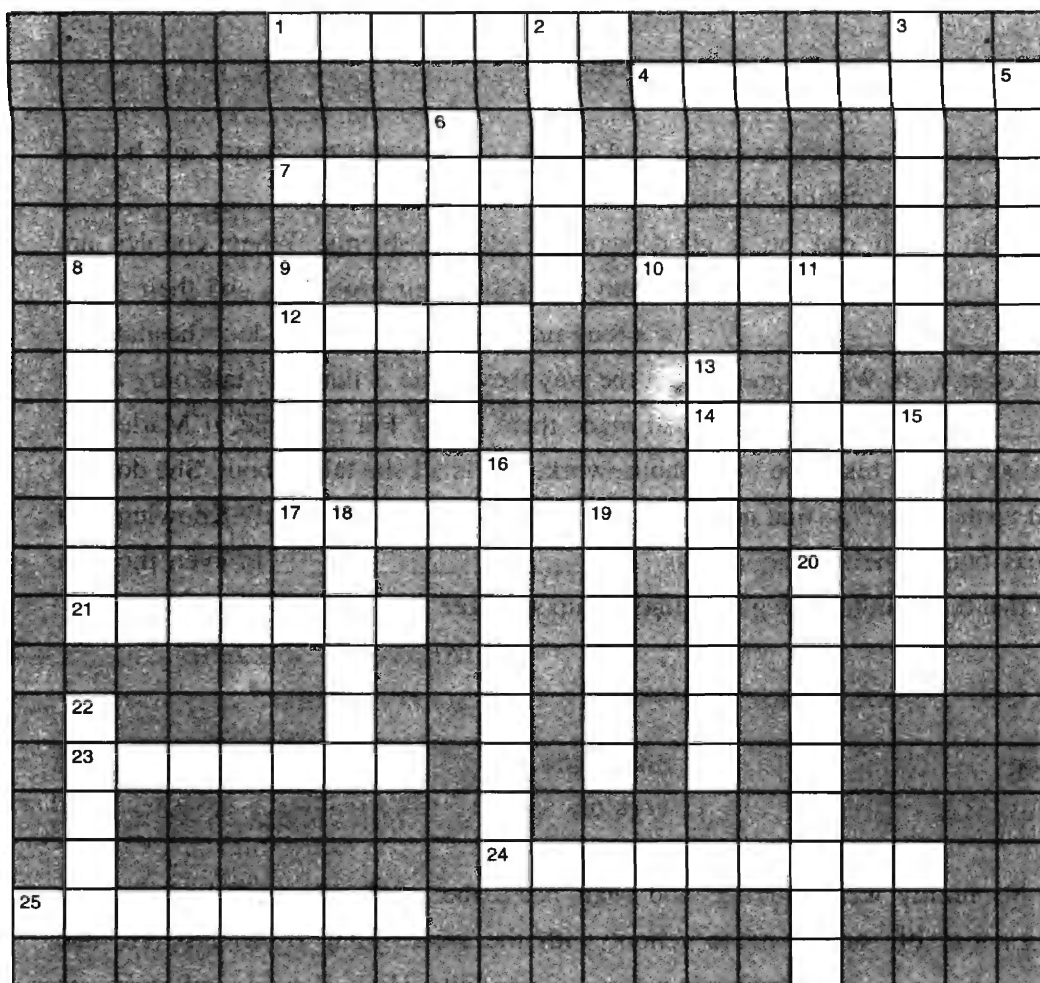
- |               |               |              |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| f. accustomed | g. anticipate | h. miserable |
| i. revise     | j. version    |              |

Matt and his family were moving, and Matt hated the whole idea. He had lived in Centerville his entire life and gone to school with the same group of friends. He had (6) \_\_\_\_\_d graduating from Centerville High School and going to Centerville Community College. Now he was going to have to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ his whole plan for the future, and he didn't like it a bit. "How can I ever become (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to a new school?" he asked his parents. "Everyone will already know each other. I'll have no friends."

At first, it seemed that Matt was right. At his new high school, he walked around alone, not smiling or talking to anyone. Finally a friendly teacher advised° him to improve his attitude°. "I know you're feeling lonely and (9) \_\_\_\_\_," he said. "But you look as though you hate this school and everyone in it. If you'll look a little friendlier, you will find new friends here." Matt decided to try. He began to talk to his classmates and take part in class. He even helped write a funny (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of "Cinderella" that his Spanish class performed for the rest of the school. By New Year, Matt was able to tell his parents that he was starting to feel at home in his new school.

## UNIT TWO: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit Two. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



abrupt  
advise  
astonish  
awkward  
brutal  
consent  
current  
deprive  
eager  
eliminate  
endure  
establish  
linger  
miserable  
objection  
occur  
potential  
reliable  
resort  
revise  
specific  
ultimate  
vague  
vanish  
variety

### ACROSS

1. To take away from; keep from having or enjoying
4. Greatest; highest possible
7. To surprise greatly; amaze
10. To turn or go (to) for help; make use of ... for aid
12. Looking forward to ... with great interest or desire
14. Cruel; heartless
17. To get rid of; do away with
21. Modern; existing now; in general use or practice today
23. Clumsy; not graceful

24. To bring into being; set up

25. Able to be depended upon

### DOWN

2. To disappear from sight
3. A number of different kinds; assortment
5. To put up with; bear impatiently
6. To agree to something
8. Definite; exact
9. To change in order to improve or to include new information

11. To happen; take place

13. A dislike; feeling of being against something

15. To give advice to; recommend

16. Very unhappy or uncomfortable

18. To delay leaving; remain

19. Sudden and unexpected

20. A natural ability that may or may not develop; possibility

22. Not clear; not exact; not definite

## UNIT TWO: Test 1

### PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. My parents used to \_\_\_\_ me for misbehaving at the supper table by making me sit on the stairs, where I could hear the conversation but not take part in it.  
a. interpret      b. penalize      c. revise      d. originate
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. It has been said that the practice of drinking tea \_\_\_\_ in China thousands of years ago when some tea leaves accidentally blew into a pot of boiling water.  
a. originated      b. misinterpreted      c. vanished      d. recollected
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. That restaurant doesn't accept reservations for small groups. The \_\_\_\_ number of people in your party must be five.  
a. vague      b. complex      c. current      d. minimum
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A beginning typist \_\_\_\_ often, while an experienced typist hits the keys rapidly.  
a. advises      b. hesitates      c. occurs      d. endures
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. My sister-in-law knows a lot about cars, so I've asked her to \_\_\_\_ me as I decide which one to buy.  
a. cry out      b. deprive      c. recollect      d. advise
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. I try to \_\_\_\_ my friendship with Sarah, but it's difficult to keep a relationship going when we're separated by so many miles.  
a. maintain      b. revise      c. respond      d. deprive
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. It used to be taught in schools that George Washington cut down a cherry tree with an ax and then confessed the deed to his father. However, \_\_\_\_ thinking is that the story was invented after Washington died.  
a. horizontal      b. reluctant      c. current      d. vague
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Garlic is delicious, but many people have an \_\_\_\_ to the way it makes one's breath smell.  
a. objection      b. potential      c. version      d. variety
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. When Mona's children behave badly, she does not spank them; instead, she \_\_\_\_ them of something they enjoy, such as their bicycles or roller skates.  
a. resorts      b. endures      c. proposes      d. deprives
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Although my car is old, it is still \_\_\_\_; it gets me to work every day.  
a. abrupt      b. reliable      c. miserable      d. ultimate

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. We stared at the long brownish \_\_\_\_ thing floating in the river, wondering if it was a log or an alligator.  
a. horizontal      b. accustomed      c. adequate      d. wholesome
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. At the town meeting, several people had ideas about what to do with the empty supermarket building. One woman \_\_\_\_ that it be turned into a skating rink.  
a. vanished      b. resorted      c. endured      d. proposed
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. Playing outdoors for hours is more \_\_\_\_ than watching TV for hours.  
a. reluctant      b. awkward      c. eager      d. wholesome

## PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. "To *misinterpret* my instructions," said the teacher, "listen carefully."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 15. The famous ballet dancer is *awkward*; he moves so lightly his feet seem to never touch the ground.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 16. It was *customary* for people to smile at each other in Laura's small town. Although she now lives in a large city, she still smiles at every stranger that she passes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 17. I think it is *brutal* to keep chickens in crowded conditions and then cut off their beaks to keep them from pecking one another.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 18. If you want to gain weight, you can *eliminate* more calories in your diet by adding nuts and olive oil to your meals.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 19. I'm so *accustomed* to living near the fire department that whenever a siren goes off, I hardly notice.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 20. The angry diner called the restaurant manager and complained that her meal had been cold, *adequate*, and too expensive.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 21. Many people in town were angry when the beautiful old courthouse was *established* in order to make room for an ugly, new shopping center.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 22. The directions Kim gave me to the new apartment were so *vague* that I got very mixed up on my way there.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 23. Because her husband was sick and couldn't work, Corinne *appealed* to their landlady for extra time to pay the rent.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 24. The *ultimate* job in a successful business career might be running errands in a large office.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 25. Our store is well thought of because we put an *emphasis* on pleasing customers rather than on making as many sales as possible in a day.

<b>Score</b> (Number correct)    _____    × 4 =    _____    %
---

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

# UNIT TWO: Test 2

## PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. abrupt	b. anticipate	c. classify	d. consent	e. discipline
f. exclaim	g. potential	h. recollect	i. resort	j. revise
k. specific	l. vanish	m. variety		

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Every time Robert takes a girl out, he thinks about whether she has the \_\_\_\_\_ to be a good wife.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Wouldn't it be wonderful if dirt \_\_\_\_\_ed as easily and completely in real life as it does in the soap ads?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The Four Corners of the World Restaurant offers dishes from a \_\_\_\_\_ of countries, including France, Vietnam, Ethiopia, and Brazil.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. To \_\_\_\_\_ him for writing on the wall of a school bathroom, the principal made Matt paint every bathroom on that floor.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Although Ed has a hot temper, I don't think he would ever \_\_\_\_\_ to violence.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Because we had \_\_\_\_\_d eight people for dinner, we were surprised when twelve showed up.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Ronald always shows his short stories to his wife and then \_\_\_\_\_s them after listening to her comments.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. When you write out the directions for me, please include the \_\_\_\_\_ streets I have to turn on.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The picnic came to an \_\_\_\_\_ end when a sudden thunderstorm seemed to come out of nowhere.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. In high school, students often \_\_\_\_\_ one another as belonging to an in-group or an out-group.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. "I will \_\_\_\_\_ to your getting a puppy," Mrs. Anders told her children, "if you promise that you will take care of walking, feeding, brushing, and housetraining it."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. Sandra didn't want to hurt her boyfriend's feelings when she unwrapped the ugly orange sweater he had bought her, so she \_\_\_\_\_ed, "Wow, it's so colorful!"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. I was so tired last night that although I \_\_\_\_\_ talking with John, I can't remember what either of us said.

(Continues on next page)



## PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_\_ 14. When the man shook hands with the child and said, "How do you do?" the child *responded*, "How do I do what?"
- \_\_\_\_ 15. Bart was sad when his best friend moved *furthermore* from his house.
- \_\_\_\_ 16. It was fun to go to my first soccer game with Franco. He knows the sport so well that he could *interpret* everything that was going on for me.
- \_\_\_\_ 17. Rico didn't seem to enjoy the party — he *lingered* before most of the other guests had even shown up.
- \_\_\_\_ 18. The students were *miserable* when their teacher said, "It's such a beautiful day — let's forget about the math test and go outside to play softball."
- \_\_\_\_ 19. Christmas and New Year's Eve are two holidays that *occur* in December.
- \_\_\_\_ 20. Naturally, most people are *reluctant* to win an all-expenses-paid vacation.
- \_\_\_\_ 21. Which *version* of *The Wizard of Oz* did you like better, the movie with Judy Garland or the one with Diana Ross?
- \_\_\_\_ 22. The speaker *astonished* the audience by opening his speech with, "Good evening, and thank you all for coming."
- \_\_\_\_ 23. Because the novel is so *complex*, it begins with a chart that lists all the characters and shows how they are related to one another.
- \_\_\_\_ 24. To get through exam week, I had to *endure* several nights without much sleep.
- \_\_\_\_ 25. After hiking for miles with nothing to eat, the friends were *eager* for dinner.

Score (Number correct) _____ × 4 = _____ %
--

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## UNIT TWO: Test 3

### PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

- |                             |                       |                    |                   |                            |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| ___ 1. <b>advise</b>        | a) give advice to     | b) expect          | c) praise         | d) forget                  |
| ___ 2. <b>anticipate</b>    | a) put up with        | b) remember        | c) dislike        | d) expect                  |
| ___ 3. <b>appeal</b>        | a) ask                | b) add to          | c) disappear      | d) explain                 |
| ___ 4. <b>astonish</b>      | a) continue           | b) surprise        | c) refuse         | d) begin                   |
| ___ 5. <b>classify</b>      | a) make clear         | b) arrange by type | c) begin          | d) put up with             |
| ___ 6. <b>deprive</b>       | a) suggest            | b) turn to         | c) take from      | d) forget                  |
| ___ 7. <b>discipline</b>    | a) punish             | b) raise up        | c) continue       | d) happen                  |
| ___ 8. <b>eliminate</b>     | a) add to             | b) get rid of      | c) disappear      | d) make more difficult     |
| ___ 9. <b>emphasis</b>      | a) least              | b) importance      | c) retelling      | d) possibility             |
| ___ 10. <b>endure</b>       | a) punish             | b) demand          | c) put up with    | d) explain                 |
| ___ 11. <b>establish</b>    | a) remain             | b) start           | c) turn to        | d) suggest                 |
| ___ 12. <b>furthermore</b>  | a) instead            | b) later           | c) in addition    | d) by the way              |
| ___ 13. <b>interpret</b>    | a) explain            | b) depend on       | c) suggest        | d) change                  |
| ___ 14. <b>maintain</b>     | a) begin              | b) continue        | c) give up on     | d) cry out                 |
| ___ 15. <b>misinterpret</b> | a) understand wrongly | b) argue           | c) depend on      | d) surprise                |
| ___ 16. <b>occur</b>        | a) begin              | b) put off         | c) take place     | d) remember                |
| ___ 17. <b>potential</b>    | a) memory             | b) feeling         | c) possibility    | d) number                  |
| ___ 18. <b>propose</b>      | a) wait               | b) make worse      | c) agree          | d) suggest                 |
| ___ 19. <b>resort to</b>    | a) turn to            | b) give away       | c) accept as true | d) refuse                  |
| ___ 20. <b>respond</b>      | a) disappear          | b) answer          | c) surprise       | d) remember                |
| ___ 21. <b>revise</b>       | a) throw out          | b) remain          | c) agree          | d) change                  |
| ___ 22. <b>specific</b>     | a) common             | b) least           | c) exact          | d) important               |
| ___ 23. <b>ultimate</b>     | a) least              | b) most strange    | c) greatest       | d) newest                  |
| ___ 24. <b>variety</b>      | a) value              | b) reason          | c) few            | d) several different kinds |
| ___ 25. <b>version</b>      | a) retelling          | b) dislike         | c) assortment     | d) penalty                 |

(Continues on next page)

**PART B: Antonyms**

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- \_\_\_ 26. **abrupt**      a) slow      b) willing      c) secret      d) scary
- \_\_\_ 27. **accustomed**      a) not exact      b) not similar to      c) not used to      d) not needed
- \_\_\_ 28. **adequate**      a) willing      b) not enough      c) not dependable      d) unhappy
- \_\_\_ 29. **awkward**      a) up and down      b) polite      c) complicated      d) graceful
- \_\_\_ 30. **brutal**      a) well-known      b) shaky      c) gentle      d) dark
- \_\_\_ 31. **complex**      a) cheerful      b) simple      c) lucky      d) natural
- \_\_\_ 32. **consent**      a) surprise      b) reward      c) appear      d) refuse
- \_\_\_ 33. **current**      a) wise      b) old-fashioned      c) unusual      d) common
- \_\_\_ 34. **customary**      a) willing      b) most      c) clear      d) unusual
- \_\_\_ 35. **eager**      a) not interested      b) not believing      c) ready      d) clear
- \_\_\_ 36. **exclaim**      a) refuse      b) forget      c) allow      d) whisper
- \_\_\_ 37. **hesitate**      a) ignore      b) suggest      c) rush ahead      d) reward
- \_\_\_ 38. **horizontal**      a) careless      b) up and down      c) dark      d) square
- \_\_\_ 39. **linger**      a) appear      b) insult      c) forget      d) hurry away
- \_\_\_ 40. **minimum**      a) unhealthy      b) loud      c) painful      d) most
- \_\_\_ 41. **miserable**      a) hard to understand      b) happy      c) willing      d) clear
- \_\_\_ 42. **objection**      a) approval      b) joke      c) win      d) loss
- \_\_\_ 43. **originate**      a) end      b) explain      c) leave      d) expect
- \_\_\_ 44. **penalize**      a) hurry      b) reward      c) give      d) appear
- \_\_\_ 45. **recollect**      a) answer      b) ask      c) know      d) forget
- \_\_\_ 46. **reliable**      a) not known      b) not enough      c) not usual      d) not dependable
- \_\_\_ 47. **reluctant**      a) surprised      b) least      c) willing      d) careless
- \_\_\_ 48. **vague**      a) lowest      b) not clumsy      c) clear      d) not exact
- \_\_\_ 49. **vanish**      a) expect      b) keep      c) appear      d) wait
- \_\_\_ 50. **wholesome**      a) unhealthy      b) simple      c) useful      d) old-fashioned

<b>Score</b> (Number correct)    _____    × 2 = _____ %
---

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

# Unit Three

## Chapter 11

**assume  
conscious  
exhaust  
external  
incredible**

**internal  
maximum  
objective  
protest  
remedy**

## Chapter 12

**artificial  
complicate  
conscience  
counsel  
detect**

**frequency  
represent  
temporary  
transparent  
triumph**

## Chapter 13

**detract  
foresight  
intense  
interval  
prosper**

**strive  
substance  
tolerance  
trait  
withdraw**

## Chapter 14

**approximately  
consistent  
cope  
evaluate  
observe**

**phrase  
practical  
random  
significant  
sole**

## Chapter 15

**authentic  
characteristic  
concept  
confront  
disrupt**

**eligible  
harsh  
remote  
shallow  
thrive**

## Unit Three: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| _____ 1. <b>assume</b>       | a) suppose to be true    b) prove to be false<br>c) hold no opinion about (something)    d) argue hotly     |
| _____ 2. <b>conscious</b>    | a) drowsy    b) awake    c) depressed    d) purposeful  |
| _____ 3. <b>exhaust</b>      | a) refill    b) remove from sight    c) use up    d) fall   |
| _____ 4. <b>external</b>     | a) buried deeply    b) outer    c) unimportant    d) common   |
| _____ 5. <b>incredible</b>   | a) unbelievable    b) showy    c) humble    d) wasteful   |
| _____ 6. <b>internal</b>     | a) inner    b) uncommon    c) easy    d) understood by few  |
| _____ 7. <b>maximum</b>      | a) not popular    b) greatest in amount    c) worst    d) comfortable                                       |
| _____ 8. <b>objective</b>    | a) bad influence    b) reason to believe    c) insult    d) goal  |
| _____ 9. <b>protest</b>      | a) speak out against    b) encourage    c) prove    d) debate   |
| _____ 10. <b>remedy</b>      | a) source of amusement    b) usual manner of doing something<br>c) collection of writings    d) cure        |
| _____ 11. <b>artificial</b>  | a) natural    b) impressive    c) not natural    d) worn out  |
| _____ 12. <b>complicate</b>  | a) smooth over    b) adjust    c) make difficult    d) divide   |
| _____ 13. <b>conscience</b>  | a) sense of being awake    b) inability to decide<br>c) sense of right and wrong    d) skill with numbers   |
| _____ 14. <b>counsel</b>     | a) improve    b) approve    c) give advice    d) revise   |
| _____ 15. <b>detect</b>      | a) obtain    b) complain    c) remark    d) notice  |
| _____ 16. <b>frequency</b>   | a) how often something happens    b) rate of speed    c) volume of sound<br>d) source of sound              |
| _____ 17. <b>represent</b>   | a) avoid talking about    b) prefer over another choice    c) be a symbol for<br>d) allow to happen         |
| _____ 18. <b>temporary</b>   | a) expected to last forever    b) impossible to achieve<br>c) serving for a limited time    d) clearly seen |
| _____ 19. <b>transparent</b> | a) solid    b) dark in color    c) seen through easily    d) unusual  |
| _____ 20. <b>triumph</b>     | a) victory    b) defeat    c) compromise    d) battle   |
| _____ 21. <b>detract</b>     | a) take away    b) grow    c) speed up    d) pass by  |
| _____ 22. <b>foresight</b>   | a) purpose    b) understanding    c) cure    d) careful planning  |
| _____ 23. <b>intense</b>     | a) unreal    b) frightened    c) unkind    d) strong  |
| _____ 24. <b>interval</b>    | a) word group    b) time in between    c) system    d) victory  |
| _____ 25. <b>prosper</b>     | a) do poorly    b) become old    c) succeed    d) help  |

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_ 26. **strive**                    a) do well    b) take away    c) feel good    d) try hard
- \_\_\_ 27. **substance**                a) care    b) knowledge    c) material    d) hard work
- \_\_\_ 28. **tolerance**                a) acceptance    b) avoidance    c) experience    d) confusion
- \_\_\_ 29. **trait**                    a) story    b) feature    c) unexpected gift    d) journey
- \_\_\_ 30. **withdraw**                a) write down    b) take back    c) make shorter    d) make happy
- \_\_\_ 31. **approximately**            a) never    b) under    c) almost    d) more than
- \_\_\_ 32. **consistent**                a) made up of    b) regular    c) useful    d) important
- \_\_\_ 33. **cope**                    a) measure    b) look at    c) deal with    d) give up
- \_\_\_ 34. **evaluate**                a) ignore    b) use up    c) judge    d) take away
- \_\_\_ 35. **observe**                a) watch closely    b) disturb    c) bring together    d) control
- \_\_\_ 36. **phrase**                    a) period of time    b) group of words    c) highest point    d) outer layer
- \_\_\_ 37. **practical**                a) useful    b) expensive    c) silly    d) unplanned
- \_\_\_ 38. **random**                a) rare    b) common    c) expensive    d) unplanned
- \_\_\_ 39. **significant**                a) lucky    b) available    c) important    d) busy
- \_\_\_ 40. **sole**                    a) delayed    b) deep    c) early    d) only
- \_\_\_ 41. **authentic**                a) real    b) old    c) expensive    d) useful
- \_\_\_ 42. **characteristic**            a) unexpected    b) usual    c) modern    d) weird
- \_\_\_ 43. **concept**                a) period of time    b) goal    c) memory    d) idea
- \_\_\_ 44. **confront**                a) succeed    b) interrupt    c) face    d) ignore
- \_\_\_ 45. **disrupt**                a) watch closely    b) describe    c) upset    d) complain
- \_\_\_ 46. **eligible**                a) qualified    b) far away    c) able to be read    d) worthless
- \_\_\_ 47. **harsh**                    a) new    b) loud    c) fair    d) cruel
- \_\_\_ 48. **remote**                a) low    b) far away    c) unusual    d) able to be moved
- \_\_\_ 49. **shallow**                a) friendly    b) solid    c) not deep    d) not strong
- \_\_\_ 50. **thrive**                a) raise up    b) do well    c) grow weak    d) need extra care

<b>SCORE:</b> (Number correct) _____ $\times 2 =$ _____ %
---

# CHAPTER 11

**assume**  
**conscious**  
**exhaust**  
**external**  
**incredible**

**internal**  
**maximum**  
**objective**  
**protest**  
**remedy**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

### 1 **assume**

/ə'sju:m/

— verb

\_\_\_ *Assume* means

- I **assumed** he was telling the truth, but he wasn't.
  - We **assumed** the sun would shine during the outdoor wedding — what a mistake! When it comes to weather, one must not take anything for granted.
- a. to fear.                      b. to forget.                      c. to believe.

### 2 **conscious**

/ˈkɒnʃəs/

— adjective

\_\_\_ *Conscious* means

- I don't think Jim is **conscious** that he sometimes seems very rude. Otherwise, he wouldn't be so ill-mannered.
  - As Arlene gave her speech to the class, she was **conscious** that people were whispering in the back of the room.
- a. pleased.                      b. aware.                      c. relieved.

### 3 **exhaust**

/ɪɡˈzɔ:st/

— verb

\_\_\_ *Exhaust* means

- The twelve-hour drive **exhausted** me so much that I couldn't even eat dinner before I went to bed.
  - Chopping firewood all afternoon **exhausted** Ken. In fact, afterward, he collapsed on the sofa and fell asleep.
- a. to delay.                      b. to teach.                      c. to tire.

### 4 **external**

/ɪk'stɜ:nəl/

— adjective

\_\_\_ *External* means

- The **external** appearances of the two houses were similar, but on the inside, the homes differed quite a bit.
  - When my grandmother first came to America, she was given her very first orange. Since no one had told her to remove its **external** layer, she began to eat the peel.
- a. final.                      b. new.                      c. outer.

### 5 **incredible**

/ɪn'kredəbl/

— adjective

\_\_\_ *Incredible* means

- The moon landing of 1969 was an **incredible** achievement.
  - It's **incredible** that a cat could survive forty-three days locked in a crate without food and water, and yet it has happened.
- a. expected.                      b. hard to believe.                      c. correct.

### 6 **internal**

/ɪn'tɜ:nəl/

— adjective

\_\_\_ *Internal* means

- The sofa's covering is torn, but its **internal** condition is fine.
  - The car looks terrific, so you'd never guess that some of its **internal** parts — the motor, brakes, and heater — need major repair.
- a. inside.                      b. hard.                      c. light in weight.

7 **maximum**  
/mæksɪmə/  
– adjective

- The sign told the **maximum** weight the elevator could safely carry.
- Three hundred miles per hour is the **maximum** speed for this airplane; it can go no faster.

\_\_\_ *Maximum* means      a. greatest.      b. worst.      c. longest.

8 **objective**  
/əb'dʒektɪv/  
– noun

- The **objective** of the workshop on time management is to teach people to get the most done in the least amount of time.
- Chris and Tomas realized they could not be business partners. Chris's **objective** was to make a lot of money, while Tomas's was to help people in the community.

\_\_\_ *Objective* means      a. cost.      b. goal.      c. excuse.

9 **protest**  
/prəʊ'test/  
– verb

- When a man was discovered beating his dogs, an animal-rights group **protested**.
- "Stop it," Billy's mother **protested**. "You can't pour blue food coloring into the mashed potatoes."

\_\_\_ *Protest* means      a. to ask.      b. to suggest.      c. to complain.

10 **remedy**  
/remɪdi/  
– noun

- Grandma's **remedy** for a cold was to wear garlic around her neck. It never cured her cold, but at least no one came close enough to her to catch it.
- There's no quick **remedy** for a broken heart; only time will heal it.

\_\_\_ *Remedy* means      a. memory.      b. treatment.      b. main cause.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

- \_\_\_\_\_ A cure; something that heals
- \_\_\_\_\_ Unbelievable; amazing; extraordinary
- \_\_\_\_\_ Aware (of something); noticing (that something is or was happening or existing)
- \_\_\_\_\_ Outer; located outside
- \_\_\_\_\_ To complain; express dissatisfaction
- \_\_\_\_\_ A purpose; goal
- \_\_\_\_\_ To suppose to be true; take for granted
- \_\_\_\_\_ To tire greatly
- \_\_\_\_\_ Inner; located inside
- \_\_\_\_\_ Most; highest; largest possible

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.



➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. <b>assume</b>	b. <b>conscious</b>	c. <b>exhaust</b>	d. <b>external</b>	e. <b>incredible</b>
f. <b>internal</b>	g. <b>maximum</b>	h. <b>objective</b>	i. <b>protest</b>	j. <b>remedy</b>

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The \_\_\_\_ part of a banana is its sweet, creamy flesh.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The \_\_\_\_ part of a banana is its peel.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The \_\_\_\_ speed allowed here is sixty-five miles an hour.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Do you think there will ever be a \_\_\_\_ for the common cold?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The Grand Canyon is the most \_\_\_\_ sight I've ever seen. It's so huge that it's hard to believe even when you're standing right there looking at it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. As Shelly tried to study, she became \_\_\_\_ of a loud "drip, drip" from the kitchen faucet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. My sister's \_\_\_\_ is to be a fashion designer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. If you don't like a company's policy, why not \_\_\_\_? For example, you could write a strong letter of complaint.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Rather than \_\_\_\_ it would not rain on our outdoor wedding, we rented a large tent, just in case.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Mental work can \_\_\_\_ someone as much as physical work.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. "You walk too fast!" Linda \_\_\_\_ed to her long-legged brother. "You'll \_\_\_\_ me before we go two blocks!"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. Although the accident victim had only a few \_\_\_\_ bruises, he had serious \_\_\_\_ injuries, including damage to his kidneys.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. It's \_\_\_\_ that penicillin, a \_\_\_\_ for various infections, was discovered by accident after some mold grew in a laboratory dish.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. I had \_\_\_\_d that my coworkers enjoyed the music in our office, but they said they were not even \_\_\_\_ of it. However, once when the music ceased°, everyone suddenly became very aware of the silence.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. Jill's \_\_\_\_ for the summer is to earn the \_\_\_\_ amount of money possible, so she has two jobs. What a contrast° between her and her brother! He's putting in the minimum° number of hours allowed where he works and going to the beach as much as possible.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>consciousness</b> , <i>noun</i>	The state of being awake
b. <b>internally</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Beneath the surface; on the inside
c. <b>protester</b> , <i>noun</i>	Someone who speaks out against something
d. <b>remedial</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Meant to improve one's skills or knowledge
e. <b>self-conscious</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Uncomfortably aware of one's behavior or appearance

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Carlo's grades have gone up in every subject since he took a \_\_\_\_\_ reading course.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. I fell down the front steps, knocked my head, and lost \_\_\_\_; when I woke up, I was back in my house.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Although Marie managed to act pleasant during the party, \_\_\_\_\_ she was extremely angry. Her boyfriend had gotten drunk and was quite obnoxious°.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A meeting about abortion, sex education in schools, or another topic that lots of people disagree about is sure to attract some \_\_\_\_s. Most people are not neutral° about such widely discussed topics — they have strong feelings one way or the other.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. When Rodney first moved from Georgia to New York City, he felt \_\_\_\_\_ about his Southern accent. At times he was even reluctant° to speak.

f. <b>assumption</b> , <i>noun</i>	A belief; something that is considered to be true
g. <b>credible</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Believable
h. <b>creed</b> , <i>noun</i>	A formal statement of religious beliefs
i. <b>exhaustion</b> , <i>noun</i>	A state of being extremely tired
j. <b>maximize</b> , <i>verb</i>	To make as great as possible

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. For many centuries, it was a common \_\_\_\_\_ that the Earth was flat.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Gina \_\_\_\_\_s the buying power of her dollars by shopping for good bargains.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. I'm not accustomed° to giving money to people on the street, but sometimes it's hard to turn down a person whose hard-luck story seems \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. When I first went to my friend's church, she explained to me her religion's \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. After he'd battled a blaze for nearly twenty-four hours, the firefighter's \_\_\_\_\_ was so great that he fell asleep without even taking off his boots.

➤ **Word Parts**

A. The prefix *self-* often means “oneself.”

**Examples:** *defense* — protection

*conscious* — aware

*self-defense* — protection of oneself

*self-conscious* — uncomfortably aware of oneself

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. **self-centered**

b. **self-conscious**

c. **self-control**

d. **self-critical**°

e. **self-educated**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Corey is so *critical of oneself*. He must have a low opinion of himself.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. It takes *control of oneself* not to eat too many fresh, warm chocolate-chip cookies.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. That writer is so *centered on himself*! After talking about himself for an hour, he said, “But enough about me. What do you think of my writing?”
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Irene felt uncomfortably *conscious of herself* because of her new hair color, so she was relieved when most people didn’t even notice it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. My grandfather was an *educated-by-oneself* man; although he didn’t even attend high school, he learned a great deal on his own.

B. The suffix *-ness* means “the quality or state of.”

**Examples:** *wholesome*° — tending to improve the character, mind, or body

*wholesomeness* — the quality of tending to improve the character, mind, or body

**Examples:** *conscious* — aware

*consciousness* — the state of being aware

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **awkwardness**°

g. **consciousness**

h. **eagerness**°

i. **usefulness**

j. **vagueness**°

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. With great \_\_\_\_, the family stood in line to enter Disneyland.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The accident victim lost \_\_\_\_ and did not wake up for several days.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Because they are growing so rapidly, many teenagers go through a period of \_\_\_\_ when it seems they are forever tripping over their own feet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. This camping knife is really wonderful for its \_\_\_\_\_. It provides a screwdriver, toothpick, bottle-opener, magnifying glass, and tweezers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The \_\_\_\_ of the instructions for putting this storage box together is driving me crazy. They are so unclear that I don’t even know which side is up.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Coming Out of a Coma

a. exhaust  
d. internal

b. external  
e. remedy

c. incredible

"Hi, Mom," Francis said. The effort of speaking (1)\_\_\_\_\_ed him, and he closed his eyes again.

To his mother, these were the best words she had ever heard. The idea that her son was speaking again, after ten weeks in a coma, was (2)\_\_\_\_\_. He had been gone from this world for so long that it seemed he'd never return. Those ten weeks had been difficult to endure°. Whenever Ms. King had visited Francis at the hospital, he had been completely still. There were no (3)\_\_\_\_\_ signs that he was thinking or feeling anything. He was, as the doctors put it, "a vegetable." But Ms. King maintained° the hope that he still had some (4)\_\_\_\_\_ life. Could he, perhaps, hear her words? Could he feel her hand squeezing his? She tried to reach him in any way she could during her daily visits.

Now, although Ms. King knew there was no quick (5)\_\_\_\_\_ for her son's serious injuries, the simple words "Hi, Mom" gave her hope that he could, someday, live a full life again.

### B. The Office Doughnut Contest

f. assume  
i. objective

g. conscious  
j. protest

h. maximum

"Are you telling me there are no doughnuts left? I don't believe it!" Joan said. "How could a huge supply of doughnuts be gone already?"

"I don't know how," Fran responded°. "I just know none are left."

"When I brought three dozen doughnuts in this morning, I (6)\_\_\_\_\_d I'd get to eat at least one," Joan said. "After all, the (7)\_\_\_\_\_ number of people who ever work in this place is ten. Today, Sue isn't even here. It's hard to believe that the other eight of you could eat thirty-six doughnuts in less than three hours. I even expected to have surplus° doughnuts for tomorrow."

Then Fran and Joan became (8)\_\_\_\_\_ of laughing in the office next door. When they looked in, the fate of the missing doughnuts became evident°. Three grown men were tossing doughnuts across the room. Their (9)\_\_\_\_\_ was to throw the doughnuts onto the pencils held up by three other grown men.

"I don't believe you guys!" Joan (10)\_\_\_\_\_ed. "Just you wait. Next time it's my turn to bring in the doughnuts, I'll bring in cream- and jelly-filled doughnuts, and we'll see how you play your little game then."

# CHAPTER 12

artificial  
complicate  
conscience  
counsel  
detect

frequency  
represent  
temporary  
transparent  
triumph

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

- 1 **artificial**  
/ɑ:ti'fɪʃəl/  
– *adjective*  
\_\_\_ *Artificial* means
  - My uncle, who lost his left arm in an accident, was recently fitted for an **artificial** arm.
  - **Artificial** flowers made of paper or silk last for years.
  - a. short-term.                      b. made by humans.                      c. heavy.
- 2 **complicate**  
/'kɒmplɪkət/  
– *verb*  
\_\_\_ *Complicate* means
  - Cooking for a crowd is difficult enough, so I don't **complicate** the job with fancy dishes. I keep the food simple.
  - Don't **complicate** the game with too many rules.
  - a. to make difficult.                      b. to find.                      c. to remember.
- 3 **conscience**  
/'kɒnʃəns/  
– *noun*  
\_\_\_ *Conscience* means
  - After Lena stole the compact disk, her **conscience** bothered her so much that she couldn't enjoy listening to the music.
  - It's strange but true that some criminals don't have a **conscience**. They really don't believe that it is wrong to cheat, steal, or even kill.
  - a. budget.                      b. plan of action.                      c. moral sense.
- 4 **counsel**  
/'kaʊnsəl/  
– *verb*  
\_\_\_ *Counsel* means
  - My basketball coach **counseled** me to work at the shoe store fewer hours each week to gain more time to study.
  - I **counseled** Angela to break up with her violent boyfriend.
  - a. to allow.                      b. to join.                      c. to suggest to.
- 5 **detect**  
/dɪ'tekt/  
– *verb*  
\_\_\_ *Detect* means
  - If you **detect** a gas leak, leave immediately and call for help.
  - Rachel never actually says that she dislikes Ron, but I **detect** a tone of dislike in her voice.
  - a. to control.                      b. to notice.                      c. to want.
- 6 **frequency**  
/'fri:kwənsɪ/  
– *noun*  
\_\_\_ *Frequency* means
  - Luis and Adam used to visit each other once or twice a week, but since Adam got married, the **frequency** of their visits has gone down.
  - I don't like to watch movies on TV because the **frequency** of ads is so great. I prefer to rent movies and see them without all the interruptions.
  - a. rate.                      b. cost.                      c. action.

**7 represent**  
/ˌreprɪˈzent/  
– verb

- Will you speak for yourself in court, or will a lawyer **represent** you?
- Loretta will **represent** her class at the Student Council meetings.

\_\_\_ *Represent* means      a. to leave.      b. to hire.      c. to speak for.

**8 temporary**  
/ˈtempərəri/  
– adjective

- Mimi used a **temporary** green hair dye just for St. Patrick's Day.
- A **temporary** worker will be hired to fill in for Kwan until she recovers from her injury.

\_\_\_ *Temporary* means      a. large.      b. short-term.      c. false.

**9 transparent**  
/trænsˈpærənt/  
– adjective

- At first, I thought the glass in the door was **transparent** and that I was seeing someone on the other side. But when I got closer, I realized that it was a mirror and I was looking at myself.
- **Transparent** wrap allows you to see what's inside a container.

\_\_\_ *Transparent* means      a. able to be seen through.      b. old.      c. thick.

**10 triumph**  
/ˈtraɪəmf/  
– noun

- Our football team's **triumph** over the state's first-place team was the reason for a huge party.
- My brother's good teachers, his understanding parents, and his own hard work all led to his **triumph** over a learning disability.

\_\_\_ *Triumph* means      a. loss.      b. meeting.      c. win.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Allowing light to pass through so that objects on the other side can be seen
2. \_\_\_\_\_ To give advice or guidance to; advise°
3. \_\_\_\_\_ How often something happens
4. \_\_\_\_\_ To notice; discover that something exists or is present
5. \_\_\_\_\_ An outstanding or very satisfying success; victory
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A sense of what is right or wrong in one's behavior
7. \_\_\_\_\_ To act or speak for
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To make difficult by adding or involving many parts or details; make complex°
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Lasting or serving for a limited time only; not permanent
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Made to imitate something natural

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

## ➤ Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. artificial	b. complicate	c. conscience	d. counsel	e. detect
f. frequency	g. represent	h. temporary	i. transparent	j. triumph

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Beating the first-place team was a greater \_\_\_\_ for the players than winning over the last-place team.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. That horror movie must have used gallons of \_\_\_\_ blood.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. How many hours a week would you \_\_\_\_ a student to work?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The \_\_\_\_ of our company newsletter is about once a month.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. If you \_\_\_\_ a job, you make it harder to do.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. A person who is cruel must not have much of a \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Substitute teachers get \_\_\_\_ assignments, often for only a day or two at a time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Elected officials are supposed to \_\_\_\_ the voters.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. In the winter, we put sheets of \_\_\_\_ plastic over our windows to help keep out the cold.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Although Norah has lived in New York for years, I can still \_\_\_\_ a slight Southern accent in her voice.

## ➤ Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. To reduce the \_\_\_\_ of infections, people should be \_\_\_\_ed to wash their hands often and well. They should also be advised<sup>o</sup> to keep counters and cutting boards free of bacteria.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. If your \_\_\_\_ won't allow you to wear real fur, choose \_\_\_\_ fur instead. Fake fur looks great and feels good, too!
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. I lost ten pounds last year. That was a great victory, but my \_\_\_\_ was only \_\_\_\_\_. I've gained every ounce of it back.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. The eyes are sometimes called "the windows of the soul," as if they were \_\_\_\_ and one could \_\_\_\_ a person's soul by looking into them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. The Block Association worked well when it \_\_\_\_ed only the residents of our street, but it has \_\_\_\_d matters by trying to speak for other parts of the neighborhood as well.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>artificially</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Unnaturally
b. <b>complication</b> , <i>noun</i>	An added detail that causes confusion or difficulty
c. <b>conscientious</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Careful about following one's sense of right and wrong
d. <b>transparency</b> , <i>noun</i>	A picture viewed by shining light through it
e. <b>triumphant</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Winning

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. If you ask me, planning a birthday party is difficult enough; trying to make it a surprise party is an unnecessary \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. My nephew's favorite watermelon bubble gum is \_\_\_\_ colored and flavored — it looks like a neon sign and tastes like nothing on Earth, least of all watermelon.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When their team scored the winning touchdown, the \_\_\_\_ players hugged each other and jumped up and down. The other team, feeling miserable°, walked away with their heads down.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Professor Ives illustrated her lecture by using an overhead \_\_\_\_ of some important charts.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Raul is a \_\_\_\_ parent — he works hard at being a good father and takes his responsibilities very seriously. He is a good example to his children and never disciplines° them with violence.

f. <b>counselor</b> , <i>noun</i>	A person in the profession of giving advice or guidance
g. <b>detective</b> , <i>noun</i>	Someone whose job is to find the information needed to solve crimes
h. <b>frequent</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Appearing often; regular
i. <b>representative</b> , <i>noun</i>	A person who speaks for someone else
j. <b>temporarily</b> , <i>adverb</i>	For a short time; not permanently

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. When their homes were damaged by a flood, many families were housed \_\_\_\_ at a local army base.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. My wife and I are considering divorce, but we've decided to see a marriage \_\_\_\_ and try to find a way to stay together.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The most famous \_\_\_\_ in the world is Sherlock Holmes. He solves murder cases by noticing small but important details. He is also able to analyze° events and come to brilliant conclusions.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. If you feel strongly about a public issue, don't hesitate° to write to your \_\_\_\_ in Congress; remember that he or she was elected to speak for you.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Airlines offer special discounts to "\_\_\_\_ fliers," people who travel often.



## ➤ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. **conscience**

- a. rate
- c. moral sense

- b. talent
- d. victory

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. **counsel**

- a. win
- c. give advice to

- b. make difficult
- d. imitate

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. **detect**

- a. act for
- c. disapprove

- b. ignore
- d. notice

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. **frequency**

- a. how often something happens
- c. difficulty

- b. allowing light to pass through
- d. short time

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. **represent**

- a. imitate
- c. speak for

- b. discover
- d. succeed

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. **artificial**

- a. new
- c. natural

- b. easy
- d. old

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. **complicate**

- a. lose
- c. ignore

- b. make easier
- d. pay attention to

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. **temporary**

- a. easy
- c. important

- b. light-blocking
- d. lasting forever

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. **transparent**

- a. blocking out light
- c. easy

- b. natural
- d. long-lasting

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. **triumph**

- a. darkness
- c. success

- b. loss
- d. game

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. The People's Choice

a. conscience

b. frequency

c. represent

d. temporary

e. triumph

Suppose you are a candidate running for public office — and you win. What a (1)\_\_\_\_\_! But now consider this: What is the best way to (2)\_\_\_\_\_ those who voted for you? How do you know what “the people” want? Sometimes the great (3)\_\_\_\_\_ of letters and phone calls makes you think you know what all the people want. Think again! For most people, interest in what their elected officials are doing is only (4)\_\_\_\_\_; you will never hear from many of them again. Also, of course, the voters who don’t write or call may feel differently from those who do. All right, then, you say, I’ll just act according to my own (5)\_\_\_\_\_ and do what I think is right. Not so fast! Remember that you’re supposed to be “the people’s choice.” So what should you do? If you know the answer to that question, I propose° that you call the politicians in Washington immediately. They’ve been looking for the answer for over two hundred years.

### B. The Christmas Wars

f. artificial

g. complicate

h. counsel

i. detect

j. transparent

Christmas time is supposed to be peaceful, but in some families it renews old battles. One is the dispute° between those who like a sweet-smelling, natural Christmas tree and those who prefer a shiny (6)\_\_\_\_\_ tree, with no pine needles to mess up the floor. Another common battle goes on between parents, who seek the best places to hide the gifts until the big day, and children, who search tirelessly to (7)\_\_\_\_\_ clues about where those hiding places are. No matter what efforts a parent may make to (8)\_\_\_\_\_ the search by shoving the gifts inside luggage or under three layers of linens, kids soon find them.

Then, of course, because the boxes and packages are not (9)\_\_\_\_\_, the kids have to resort° to opening a corner of the wrapping. Or they try to determine° what’s inside by shaking, bouncing, and rattling the box. Sooner or later, they make enough noise to catch an adult’s attention. At this point the kids come out from behind the furnace or under the bed, trying very hard to look innocent. The parents get mad, the kids are in tears — Merry Christmas, everyone! It’s hard to know how to (10)\_\_\_\_\_ parents in this situation. Would the best advice be to ask Grandpa or Grandma to take the kids for a month or so?

# CHAPTER 13

detract  
foresight  
intense  
interval  
prosper

strive  
substance  
tolerance  
trait  
withdraw

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **detract**  
/dɪ'trækt/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Detract* means

- A headache can **detract** from even the most enjoyable experience.
- Eating with someone who slurps can **detract** from the pleasure of a good meal.

a. to grow.                      b. to pass.                      c. to take away.

2 **foresight**  
/'fɔ:sait/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Foresight* means

- Jen had the **foresight** to apply to several colleges, knowing that she might not get into the one she wanted most.
- People who are always late show a lack of **foresight**.

a. wise planning.                      b. courage.                      c. strength.

3 **intense**  
/'ɪntens/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Intense* means

- After hours in the blazing sun, the hikers felt **intense** thirst.
- Dad went to the emergency room because of **intense** pain in his lower back.

a. very great.                      b. unimportant.                      c. imaginary.

4 **interval**  
/'ɪntəvəl/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Interval* means

- The **interval** between Christmas and New Year's Day is only a week.
- There was an **interval** of several hours between the births of the twins — in fact, they were born on separate days.

a. happiness.                      b. difference in importance.                      c. space.

5 **prosper**  
/'prɒspə(r)/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Prosper* means

- The company is so strong that it is expected to **prosper** even though similar companies are going out of business.
- Someone who always jumps from job to job is not likely to **prosper**.

a. to believe.                      b. to do well.                      c. to take back.

6 **strive**  
/'straɪv/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Strive* means

- Many people **strive** to become movie stars, but few succeed.
- Every year, many mountain climbers **strive** to reach the top of Mount Qomolangma.

a. to make a mistake.                      b. to make a discovery.                      c. to make an effort.

7 **substance**  
/ˈsʌbstəns/  
– noun

- Snails leave a trail of a shiny **substance** everywhere they crawl.
- Gold is such a soft **substance** that it can be pounded into a very thin sheet.

\_\_\_ *Substance* means      a. material.                      b. light.                      c. force.

8 **tolerance**  
/ˈtɒlərəns/  
– noun

- The **tolerance** of our neighbors is obvious when you see children of different races playing together at their house.
- Because of the Johnsons' **tolerance**, their son-in-law's different religion is not a problem for the family.

\_\_\_ *Tolerance* means      a. planning.                      b. respect for others.                      c. financial success.

9 **trait**  
/treɪ/  
– noun

- My friend's nicest **trait** is her ability to laugh at herself.
- My worst **trait** is always worrying about what people think of me.

\_\_\_ *Trait* means      a. personal quality.                      b. goal.                      c. preparation.

10 **withdraw**  
/wɪðˈdrɔː/  
– verb

- When I realized I was working Thursday, I had to **withdraw** my offer to baby-sit for my sister's kids.
- "Please **withdraw** your fingers from my shoulder," the woman said to her coworker. "And keep your hands to yourself."

\_\_\_ *Withdraw* means      a. give.                      b. find.                      c. take back.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ A quality or feature, as of personality, for which a person is known
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Respect for the differing views, practices, and characteristics of others; freedom from prejudice
3. \_\_\_\_\_ To take away something desirable (from); reduce the quality or value of
4. \_\_\_\_\_ To take back (something or a statement); remove
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Extreme in strength or degree; very strong
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Care in planning or preparing for the future
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The period of time between two events
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To try hard
9. \_\_\_\_\_ To succeed, especially financially
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Physical material; matter of a particular type

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

### ➤ Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. detract	b. foresight	c. intense	d. interval	e. prosper
f. strive	g. substance	h. tolerance	i. trait	j. withdraw

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. I wished I could \_\_\_\_\_ my angry words, but it was too late.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. That ugly vacant lot \_\_\_\_\_s from the beauty of the neighborhood.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Shelby \_\_\_\_\_s to do well in all her classes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Patience is an important \_\_\_\_\_ for a preschool teacher.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Budgeting requires the \_\_\_\_\_ to think of future expenses.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Martin Luther King taught that all people should be viewed with \_\_\_\_\_, no matter what their race or religious beliefs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Barbara practices swimming for many hours each day, driven by her \_\_\_\_\_ desire to compete in the Olympics.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. There's an \_\_\_\_\_ of an hour between two of my classes today.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The man was arrested after police saw him sell someone a white \_\_\_\_\_ in a plastic bag.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. At first, the Savings Mart didn't do well, but after it lowered its prices and increased its advertising, the store began to \_\_\_\_\_.

### ➤ Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. One of Paul's unpleasant \_\_\_\_\_s is that he has very little \_\_\_\_\_ for anyone who disagrees with his opinions.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. People who \_\_\_\_\_ tend to be individuals who \_\_\_\_\_ to do their jobs well, spend less than they earn, and save for the future.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. I like to watch a movie without interruption. Even the short \_\_\_\_\_ of a TV ad \_\_\_\_\_s from my enjoyment.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. After we drove to the beach and ran out into the \_\_\_\_\_ sunshine of midday, we realized that none of us had had the \_\_\_\_\_ to bring along sunblock lotion.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. The principal made two people \_\_\_\_\_ from school last term for being addicted to some \_\_\_\_\_ — for one it was alcohol, and for the other it was cocaine. They were counseled<sup>o</sup> to get professional help.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>detractor</b> , <i>noun</i>	A critic; one who points out the bad points of something
b. <b>intensify</b> , <i>verb</i>	To make something stronger or more powerful
c. <b>intent</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Having the mind firmly set on a purpose
d. <b>prosperity</b> , <i>noun</i>	Financial success
e. <b>tolerant</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Willing to bear patiently (something not especially liked)

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Jane was \_\_\_\_ of her daughter's having many pets until the girl brought home a giant spider. Then Jane finally said no.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. If you give the dog food at the table, he won't stop begging — in fact, he will linger<sup>o</sup> at the table and \_\_\_\_ his begging.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Most people in the audience liked the school board's plan, but one \_\_\_\_ kept pointing out things that he thought were wrong with the plan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. People who are born into a life of \_\_\_\_ may find it hard to understand the problems of the poor.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Since she was in second grade, Lisa had been \_\_\_\_ upon becoming an airline pilot.

f. <b>insight</b> , <i>noun</i>	Understanding
g. <b>intensity</b> , <i>noun</i>	Great power
h. <b>prosperous</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Successful; well-off
i. <b>substantial</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Solidly built; not fragile <sup>o</sup>
j. <b>tolerate</b> , <i>verb</i>	To put up with; bear

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Levi Strauss was a poor tailor until he became \_\_\_\_ by making and selling "Levi's" jeans.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Peter is a good counselor because he has so much \_\_\_\_ into why people do the things they do.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. I'd like to hear my favorite band in concert, but I don't think I could \_\_\_\_ the crowds of people there.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The \_\_\_\_ of his hunger made it impossible for Bart to think of anything but food. He was conscious<sup>o</sup> of only his growling stomach.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. In the children's story "The Three Little Pigs," the lazy pigs build houses of sticks and straw that are easy to destroy. But the hard-working pig wants to inhabit<sup>o</sup> a strong house, so he builds a \_\_\_\_ house of bricks.

## ➤ Word Parts

A. The suffix *-ous* means “full of” or “having much.”

**Examples:** *fury* — violent anger

*furious* — full of violent anger

*prosper* — to succeed financially

*prosperous* — having much financial success

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

a. **envious**

b. **famous**

c. **furious**

d. **joyous**

e. **prosperous**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Elvis Presley is still very well known; in fact, he may be more \_\_\_\_\_ today than he was when he was alive.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. During her latest fight with her boyfriend, Jill was so \_\_\_\_\_ that she threw a book at him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Not many people “get rich quick” by winning the lottery; most of us have to work long and hard to become \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The wedding of my eighty-year-old grandmother was a \_\_\_\_\_ occasion for the family.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. It is hard not to feel \_\_\_\_\_ of Paul, who seems to have everything good in life: a great marriage, a wonderful job, terrific kids, and lots of friends.

B. The suffix *-al* often means “the act of.”

**Examples:** *deny* — to say that something is not true

*denial* — the act of saying that something is not true

*refuse* — to say “no” to doing or giving or accepting something

*refusal* — the act of saying “no” to something

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **approval**

g. **betrayal**

h. **denial**

i. **survival**

j. **withdrawal**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The \_\_\_\_\_ of one thousand dollars from the man’s bank account was unusual. He usually took out only fifty dollars or so.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Giving secret information to an enemy is a \_\_\_\_\_ of one’s country.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. My mother strongly believes in the soul’s \_\_\_\_\_ after death, but my father believes there is nothing after death.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Mark’s \_\_\_\_\_ that he had eaten the cookies surprised me because I noticed Oreo crumbs all over his bed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. We can’t leave work early without our boss’s \_\_\_\_\_.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. What's Your Type?

- |                     |                   |                  |
|---------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| a. <b>intense</b>   | b. <b>prosper</b> | c. <b>strive</b> |
| d. <b>tolerance</b> | e. <b>trait</b>   |                  |

If being stuck behind a slow-moving car drives you nuts or if you are often impatient with a friend's progress in completing a task, you may be what researchers classify<sup>o</sup> as a Type A personality. A (1)\_\_\_\_\_ shared by Type A people is the desire to make effective use of time. They (2)\_\_\_\_\_ to accomplish more in an hour than other people do in a day. A typical example of Type A behavior is the man who built a desk onto the front of his exercise bike. Sitting in front of the TV set, he could exercise, watch football, and pay bills all at the same time. Type A's often have little (3)\_\_\_\_\_ for the calmer Type B people, who Type A's feel waste a lot of time. Naturally, Type A people often (4)\_\_\_\_\_ financially, driven as they are to achieve the maximum<sup>o</sup> success at whatever they do. However, they also suffer from heart disease more often than the more relaxed Type B's. It seems that the Type A's (5)\_\_\_\_\_ need for success creates a lot of tension, which causes damage to the body.

### B. What a Circus!

- |                     |                     |                    |
|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| f. <b>detract</b>   | g. <b>foresight</b> | h. <b>interval</b> |
| i. <b>substance</b> | j. <b>withdraw</b>  |                    |

I didn't actually volunteer to go to the circus. I was sort of volunteered. My son Tommy was going with his first-grade class, and he told his teacher to sign me up. When I saw how eager<sup>o</sup> he was for me to accompany<sup>o</sup> his class, I couldn't (6)\_\_\_\_\_ the offer.

So there I was, along with a handful of other parents and ninety excited six- and seven-year-olds. I don't really recollect<sup>o</sup> a great deal of the circus. What I do remember is the purple (7)\_\_\_\_\_ that someone spilled on my sneaker, because it never washed off. I remember a lot about the inside of the bathroom, because I took so many children there. I remember washing cotton candy off a lot of faces, since I had the (8)\_\_\_\_\_ to bring a box of baby wipes along. And I remember the boy who exclaimed<sup>o</sup>, "Oh, no!" and hid his face in my lap when an acrobat took a scary walk across a high horizontal<sup>o</sup> wire.

But nothing could (9)\_\_\_\_\_ from the fun those kids had. To them, every act was a wonder. Even when the juggler dropped three of his four bowling pins, the kids thought he was great. Just watching all the activity exhausted<sup>o</sup> the children. In the brief (10)\_\_\_\_\_ between our boarding the bus to go home and Tommy's falling asleep, he told me, "That was the bestest circus ever. You were really lucky to get to come along." Looking back at it all, I think I was, too.



# CHAPTER 14

approximately  
consistent  
cope  
evaluate  
observe

phrase  
practical  
random  
significant  
sole

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

- 1 **approximately**  
/ə'prɒksɪmətli/  
– *adverb*  
\_\_\_\_ *Approximately* means    a. certainly.                      b. never.                      c. about.  
  - A month is **approximately** thirty days long.
  - The suspect in the murder case is a dark-haired white woman who is **approximately** forty years old.
- 2 **consistent**  
/kən'sɪstənt/  
– *adjective*  
\_\_\_\_ *Consistent* means    a. steady.                      b. early.                      c. surprising.  
  - To be rated number one in tennis, a player must be a **consistent** winner, not a winner now and then.
  - I would rather work for someone with a **consistent** manner than someone full of praise one day and screaming insults the next.
- 3 **cope**  
/kəʊp/  
– *verb*  
\_\_\_\_ *Cope with* means    a. to value.                      b. to predict.                      c. to handle.  
  - The death of a beloved pet is hard to **cope** with.
  - I read an interesting article on how to **cope** with difficult people.
- 4 **evaluate**  
/ɪ'væljuet/  
– *verb*  
\_\_\_\_ *Evaluate* means    a. to ignore.                      b. to judge.                      c. to remember.  
  - I need to **evaluate** both job offers before I decide which to accept.
  - Several long-distance phone companies make the same promises, so it is hard to **evaluate** which is best.
- 5 **observe**  
/əb'zɜ:v/  
– *verb*  
\_\_\_\_ *Observe* means    a. to see.                      b. to think about.                      c. to control.  
  - Medical students are allowed to **observe** surgeons at work.
  - The children lay on the ground to **observe** some ants building an anthill.
- 6 **phrase**  
/freɪz/  
– *noun*  
\_\_\_\_ *Phrase* means    a. puzzle.                      b. word group.                      c. answer.  
  - The **phrase** “at this point in time” can be reduced to a single word: *now*.
  - The **phrase** “Tom, Dick or Harry” means “any member of the general public.”

7 **practical**  
/ˈpræktɪkəl/  
– adjective

- Mom puts old socks to **practical** use as dust rags.
- The two single friends realized it would be **practical** to move in together and split the rent.

\_\_\_ *Practical* means

- a. done for practice.      b. expensive.      c. sensible.

8 **random**  
/ˈrændəm/  
– adjective

- We studied two paintings in art class. One was a clearly organized arrangement of black and white dots; the other seemed to be a **random** collection of spots and streaks of brilliant color.
- The movement of clouds may seem to be **random**, but scientists know that there is a pattern to how they move.

\_\_\_ *Random* means

- a. without order.      b. rare.      c. useful.

9 **significant**  
/sɪɡˈnɪfɪkənt/  
– adjective

- My factory job was hard but worthwhile because I earned a **significant** part of my college expenses.
- Doctors have found that a good attitude can play a **significant** role in helping people recover from diseases.

\_\_\_ *Significant* means

- a. busy.      b. large.      c. easy.

10 **sole**  
/səʊl/  
– adjective

- After her husband died, the woman was the **sole** support of a large family.
- The **sole** reason my cousin ever calls me is to ask for money.

\_\_\_ *Sole* means

- a. only.      b. friendly.      c. early.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Quite large in amount or quantity; important in amount
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Almost, but not exactly; more or less
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Not having a plan, purpose, or pattern; chance
4. \_\_\_\_\_ To decide on the value of (something)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ To deal with difficulties; handle
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Only; being the only one
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Useful and sensible
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To watch with attention
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Steady; regular
10. \_\_\_\_\_ A group of words with a meaning; an expression

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

## ➤ Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. approximately	b. consistent	c. cope	d. evaluate	e. observe
f. phrase	g. practical	h. random	i. significant	j. sole

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Rhonda is a \_\_\_\_ student, bringing home B's regularly.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The Murphys have so many pets that they spend a \_\_\_\_ amount of their grocery money to feed them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The course on "Smart Shopping" teaches people how to \_\_\_\_ the worth of products and services.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. To learn to make lasagna, I \_\_\_\_d my mother making it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. I like to take \_\_\_\_ walks, without any plan in mind.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. My friends helped me \_\_\_\_ with my father's death.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. People just learning English are often puzzled by \_\_\_\_s such as "on the up-and-up" and "You don't say!"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. I barely know my neighbor — the \_\_\_\_ conversation we ever have is saying "Good morning" to each other.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. White furniture is not \_\_\_\_ for a family with little kids who wear dirty shoes and spill Kool-Aid.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. "I'd like you to cut off this much," Eileen told her hairdresser, indicating° \_\_\_\_ two inches.

## ➤ Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. Dave found an inexpensive, \_\_\_\_ way to \_\_\_\_ with his problem of mice in his house — he got a cat.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. Pizza is Little Italy's best seller, bringing in \_\_\_\_ 30 percent of the profits, a very \_\_\_\_ part of the restaurant's income.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. The best way to \_\_\_\_ a college and decide if it is right for you is to visit it and \_\_\_\_ classes and other activities there.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. The \_\_\_\_ "a chance meeting" refers to a \_\_\_\_ meeting — in other words, one that happens accidentally.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. The \_\_\_\_ exercise I get is walking — nothing else. But I am \_\_\_\_ about it — I do it every day. I prefer solitary° walks so that I don't have to talk to anyone.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>evaluation</b> , <i>noun</i>	A judgment of the value or quality of something
b. <b>Impractical</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not sensible; not useful
c. <b>Inconsistent</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not steady; changing; not dependable
d. <b>observant</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Watchful; paying careful attention
e. <b>at random</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Without a plan or purpose

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Waiting to see the dentist, Loni picked up a magazine \_\_\_\_, not even noticing its title.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. We have an \_\_\_\_ supply of hot water — sometimes there is plenty; at other times, there's not enough for even one shower.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The restaurant closed down abruptly° after a bad \_\_\_\_ by the health department.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. If you were more \_\_\_\_, you would have noticed that we have been driving in a circle for a considerable° amount of time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. I rarely buy clothing in \_\_\_\_ fabrics that I can't stick in the washing machine or that require ironing. I don't want to complicate° my housework any more than necessary.

f. <b>Insignificant</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Small in size or amount
g. <b>observation</b> , <i>noun</i>	The careful watching of someone or something
h. <b>observatory</b> , <i>noun</i>	A building that houses telescopes for the study of the stars
i. <b>rephrase</b> , <i>verb</i>	To say again, but in a different way
j. <b>significance</b> , <i>noun</i>	Importance

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The detectives' \_\_\_\_ of the house led them to believe that there was an illegal gambling operation going on inside.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Last Saturday, science students went on a field trip to an \_\_\_\_, where they were able to look at the planets and even watch a meteor shower.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Santiago asked Abby, "Will you marry me?" Then, before she could answer, he said, "Let me \_\_\_\_ that — will you marry me in two years when I get my degree?"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The invention of the printing press was of great \_\_\_\_ because it made books available to people who could not afford hand-copied ones.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. I was astonished° to see a woman at the supermarket drop a quarter and not pick it up. She must have thought it was an \_\_\_\_ amount of money.

➤ **Synonyms and Antonyms**

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. **cope**

- a. compete with
- c. quarrel

- b. manage
- d. agree

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. **evaluate**

- a. judge
- c. see

- b. pay for
- d. borrow

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. **observe**

- a. set a goal
- c. watch

- b. perform
- d. handle

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. **phrase**

- a. a practice
- c. a plan

- b. something useful
- d. a group of words

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. **sole**

- a. important
- c. sensible

- b. only
- d. unplanned

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. **approximately**

- a. well-known
- c. not clear

- b. exactly
- d. often

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. **consistent**

- a. having a plan
- c. valuable

- b. not close
- d. not regular

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. **practical**

- a. useless
- c. attractive

- b. valuable
- d. common

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. **random**

- a. not steady
- c. unknown

- b. interesting
- d. planned

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. **significant**

- a. wrong
- c. dull

- b. unclear
- d. small in amount

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Practicing Kindness

a. consistent

b. evaluate

c. observe

d. phrase

e. random

Maybe you've heard the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ or seen it printed on a bumper sticker. It encourages people to do kind things for no particular reason, with no particular plan. It goes like this: "Practice (2) \_\_\_\_\_ acts of kindness and senseless beauty." I don't know where it originated° or who said it first. But I have seen people putting the idea into practice. I've (3) \_\_\_\_\_ d people putting quarters into parking meters so that a stranger's car wouldn't be ticketed. I've heard of someone paying a family's bill in a restaurant, then leaving before the family found out. I know a man who is (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in not letting a day go by without giving someone a sincere compliment.

Why do these people bother? They probably don't stop to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ their actions or objectives°. But if they did, I assume° they would say something like this: Kindness can be catching, just as cruelty can be. When we do something unexpected and nice for another person, who knows where that act of kindness might end?

### B. The Stinking Rose

f. approximately

g. cope

h. practical

i. significant

j. sole

Centuries ago in Rome, it was called "stinking rose." It was then used to flavor food and for such (6) \_\_\_\_\_ purposes as fighting colds. Today we call it garlic, and we too find this wonderful substance° delicious and useful. In fact, in one recent year, Americans bought enough garlic to provide every man, woman, and child with (7) \_\_\_\_\_ one and a half pounds of the stuff. It is added to a wide variety° of foods, from appetizers to zucchini — even to chocolate peanut butter cups. The unfortunate thing about garlic is that it produces bad breath. One way to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with garlic breath is to chew parsley, an excellent natural breath cleaner. Or eat garlic only with others who are also eating it. Being tasty is not the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ good thing about garlic — it turns out that the ancient Romans were absolutely right about its having health benefits. A (10) \_\_\_\_\_ number of studies (about 3,000) have been done of the onionlike plant. They suggest that garlic may strengthen the immune system, fight colds, cause a reduction° in blood pressure, and even help prevent cancer.

eligible  
harsh  
remote  
shallow  
thrive

### *Ten Words in Context*

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

- a. old.
- b. qualified.
- c. real.

- a. usual.                      b. convenient.                      c. strange.

- a. idea.                      b. worst fear.                      c. memory.

- a. to avoid.                      b. to face.                      c. to prepare.

- a. to manage.                      b. to go to.                      c. to upset.

- a. qualified.                  b. known.                  c. pleased.

- 7 **harsh**  
/hɑːʃ/  
– adjective
- \_\_\_ *Harsh* means
- The **harsh** ruler decided to punish the entire village for one man's crime.
  - The scolding the children received was too **harsh** — they hadn't done anything all that bad.
- a. fair.                      b. rough.                      c. wasteful.
- 8 **remote**  
/rɪ'məʊt/  
– adjective
- \_\_\_ *Remote* means
- Humans have explored even the most **remote** parts of the planet, areas deep in forests and beneath the seas.
  - Some parts of the park are so **remote** that visitors seldom reach them.
- a. large.                      b. typical.                      c. distant.
- 9 **shallow**  
/'ʃæləʊ/  
– adjective
- \_\_\_ *Shallow* means
- The lifeguard at the pool insists that young children stay at the **shallow** end.
  - The cake won't rise very high in that **shallow** pan; you'll need a pan with higher sides.
- a. real.                      b. not deep.                      c. very wide.
- 10 **thrive**  
/θraɪv/  
– verb
- \_\_\_ *Thrive* means
- The African violets should **thrive** in that sunny window.
  - In the past, many premature babies died, but with modern medical care most of them **thrive** and live normal lives.
- a. to do very well.                      b. to grow weaker.                      c. to need too much care.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Not deep
2. \_\_\_\_\_ To face or oppose boldly
3. \_\_\_\_\_ To grow very well; improve physically
4. \_\_\_\_\_ To cause disorder or confusion; upset
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Qualified to be chosen; desirable as a candidate
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Unkind or cruel; strict; severe
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Far away; out-of-the-way; hidden away
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Typical of someone or something
9. \_\_\_\_\_ A general thought; an idea
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Real; true; actual

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.



➤ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. authentic	b. characteristic	c. concept	d. confront	e. disrupt
f. eligible	g. harsh	h. remote	i. shallow	j. thrive

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The creek was so \_\_\_\_ that the water came up only to my ankles.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Some imitation pearl necklaces are so beautiful that only a jeweler can tell the pearls are not \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Cindy received \_\_\_\_ treatment from her cruel stepmother.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The preschool teacher tries to help her little students understand the \_\_\_\_ of sharing.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The student assembly was \_\_\_\_ed by a fire drill.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The weak, sickly child began to \_\_\_\_ after doctors corrected her heart problem.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Professor Lopez studies little-known plants in \_\_\_\_ parts of our state forests.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. After a man dropped a bag of trash on the ground, another man picked it up and \_\_\_\_ed him, saying, "I think this is yours. Find a trash can."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Students must have at least a B average to be \_\_\_\_ for any of the school sports teams.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Fat, fleshy leaves are \_\_\_\_ of cactus plants.

➤ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. The two rings looked alike to me, but the jeweler said that only one had the colorful sparkle that is \_\_\_\_ of an \_\_\_\_ diamond.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. Tomorrow I will \_\_\_\_ our neighbors and protest<sup>o</sup> about the way that their unleashed dog \_\_\_\_s the children's backyard games.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. A child who does poorly in school with a \_\_\_\_, bad-tempered teacher might \_\_\_\_ with a teacher who is gentle and caring.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. Because she is a biologist, Mia is \_\_\_\_ to be part of a research team that will study turtles on a \_\_\_\_ island.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. Because babies can drown in very little water, the \_\_\_\_ that they are safe in a \_\_\_\_ pool is false — a reliable<sup>o</sup> adult must be watching them every second.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>character</b> , <i>noun</i>	The moral qualities of a person
b. <b>confrontation</b> , <i>noun</i>	An angry or threatening meeting
c. <b>disruptive</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Causing confusion or disturbance
d. <b>Inauthentic</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not real; fake
e. <b>Ineligible</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not qualified for a particular purpose

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The museum directors were shocked to learn that their most famous painting was \_\_\_\_; it was only a very well-done copy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Jerry wouldn't cheat on a test — his \_\_\_\_ is very good.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. It can be dangerous to try to break up a \_\_\_\_ between a couple of angry dogs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. One \_\_\_\_ child can take up more of a teacher's attention than a whole class of well-behaved children.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. People who are related to any of the judges are \_\_\_\_ to enter the talent contest.

f. <b>conceive</b> , <i>verb</i>	To have an idea or opinion
g. <b>disruption</b> , <i>noun</i>	A disturbance or interruption
h. <b>eligibility</b> , <i>noun</i>	Qualifications; fitness
i. <b>harshly</b> , <i>adverb</i>	In a cruel or strict manner
j. <b>harshness</b> , <i>noun</i>	Strictness; cruelty

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. There was an interesting \_\_\_\_ in English class today — someone opened a window, and a sparrow flew in.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Sports are supposed to be wholesome° activities, so it was especially sad when two athletes lost their \_\_\_\_ to compete in the Olympics because they failed drug tests.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. "Everyone down on the floor. You too, lady," the bank robber said \_\_\_\_ to the elderly woman.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Children \_\_\_\_ of their parents as very wise and powerful. However, when they become teenagers, they revise° that view quite a bit.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Benita loves playing the piano, but she quit taking piano lessons because of the \_\_\_\_ of her teacher's methods. He once made her play the same few notes approximately° twenty-five times in a row.

## ➤ Analogies

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

- \_\_\_\_ 1. AUTHENTIC : REAL ::  
a. lost : found  
b. expensive : high-priced  
c. expected : surprising  
d. inner : external
- \_\_\_\_ 2. EXTERNAL° : INTERNAL° ::  
a. outside : weather  
b. sole° : only  
c. intense° : weak  
d. red : bright
- \_\_\_\_ 3. HARSH : KIND ::  
a. late : tardy  
b. helpful : useful  
c. permanent : temporary°  
d. incredible° : amazing
- \_\_\_\_ 4. ORANGE : FRUIT ::  
a. cat : dog  
b. triumph° : loss  
c. penicillin : remedy°  
d. strawberry : cherry
- \_\_\_\_ 5. CONFRONT : AVOID ::  
a. strive° : try  
b. eligible : qualified  
c. tear : rip  
d. prosper° : fail
- \_\_\_\_ 6. SHALLOW : DEEP ::  
a. brief : short  
b. disrupt : upset  
c. laughing : frowning  
d. random° : unplanned
- \_\_\_\_ 7. WINDOW : TRANSPARENT° ::  
a. door : doorknob  
b. window : curtain  
c. car : highway  
d. grass : green
- \_\_\_\_ 8. THRIVE : WEAKEN ::  
a. protest° : approve  
b. smile : grin  
c. protect : guard  
d. observe° : watch
- \_\_\_\_ 9. TRAIT° : PATIENCE ::  
a. promise : withdraw°  
b. substance° : clay  
c. banker : money  
d. kindness : intelligence
- \_\_\_\_ 10. GIVE : GIFT ::  
a. run : walk  
b. detect° : clue  
c. concept : idea  
d. exhaust° : tire

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. A Modern Fairy Tale

a. **concept**b. **confront**c. **disrupt**d. **eligible**e. **harsh**

Many fairy tales are versions° of the same story: A prince has his pick of all the (1)\_\_\_\_\_ women in the kingdom. But the girl he likes best is in big trouble, so the prince bravely rescues her. The girl doesn't do much of anything. She just looks pretty. The stories all end with more or less the same phrase°: "They lived happily ever after."

But one fairy tale, "The Paper Bag Princess," gets rid of the (2)\_\_\_\_\_ of the brave prince and the helpless girl. In it, Princess Elizabeth is engaged to Prince Ronald. But a dragon (3)\_\_\_\_\_s their plans by burning the castle and capturing Ronald. Elizabeth decides to rescue him. Since all her pretty clothes have been burned up, she puts on a paper bag. She bravely (4)\_\_\_\_\_s the dragon and tricks him into using up all his strength on silly tasks. Then she goes into the dragon's cave and finds Ronald.

Instead of being grateful, however, Ronald gives Elizabeth a (5)\_\_\_\_\_ scolding for being covered with dirt and smoke and for wearing a bag. He tells her to come back when she looks like "a real princess." Elizabeth tells Ronald that though he looks like a real prince, with his fancy clothes and neat hair, he is, in fact, "a bum." The last picture in the book shows Elizabeth dancing happily off into the sunset, with the final line "They didn't get married after all."

### B. Wolf Children

f. **authentic**g. **characteristic**h. **remote**i. **shallow**j. **thrive**

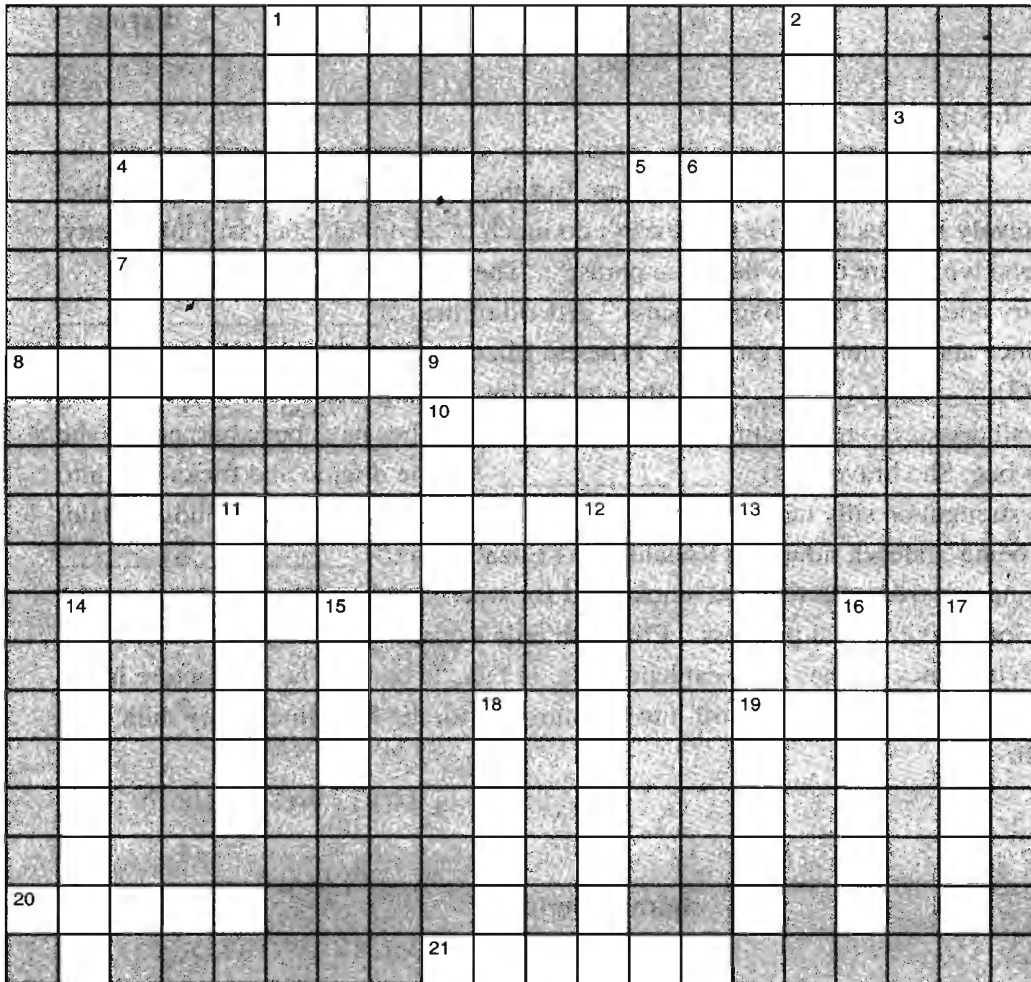
A tale of children being raised by wolves sounds incredible°. However, though hard to believe, one story about wolf children appears to be (6)\_\_\_\_\_. In Singapore during the early 1920s, Reverend J. A. L. Singh heard stories of "man-beasts" that were frightening the people of a (7)\_\_\_\_\_ jungle village. Along with a group of other men, Singh went in search of that hidden village and the strange creatures.

When Singh uncovered a (8)\_\_\_\_\_ hole, he discovered a family of wolves. From within the wolves' den, two pale creatures peeked out. Singh's party killed the adult wolves and dug into the den. There they found two human children curled up with the cubs. The children were captured and brought to the village in bamboo cages.

The children never spoke to other humans; instead, they howled and growled like animals. Their diet was equally wolf-like: they preferred raw meat, mice, and cockroaches. And they had the wolf's (9)\_\_\_\_\_ desire to be active at night, as well as a dislike of the indoors. Sadly, the children did not (10)\_\_\_\_\_. Both grew weak and died.

## UNIT THREE: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit Three. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



artificial  
complicate  
concept  
cope  
counsel  
detect  
exhaust  
external  
foresight  
harsh  
intense  
internal  
phrase  
protest  
random  
remedy  
remote  
shallow  
significant  
sole  
strive  
thrive  
tolerance  
trait  
triumph

### ACROSS

1. To give advice or guidance to
4. Extreme in strength or degree; very strong
5. To try hard
7. An outstanding or very satisfying success; victory
8. Care in planning or preparing for the future
10. Far away; out-of-the-way
11. Quite large in amount or quantity
14. To tire greatly
19. Not having a plan, purpose, or pattern; chance

20. Unkind or cruel; strict;

severe

21. A cure; something that heals

### DOWN

1. To deal with difficulties
2. Made to imitate something natural
3. To notice; discover that something exists or is present
4. Inner; located inside
6. To grow very well; improve physically

9. A quality or feature, as of personality, for which a person is known

11. Not deep
12. To make difficult by adding or involving many parts or details; make complex
13. Respect for the differing views, practices, and characteristics of others
14. Outer; located outside
15. Only; being the only one
16. A general thought; an idea
17. To complain
18. A group of words with a meaning; an expression

## UNIT THREE: Test 1

### PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Since my math class was very difficult for me, I consider the B I got for the course to be a great \_\_\_\_.
- a. foresight      b. triumph      c. tolerance      d. trait
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. When I began exercising I was in such bad shape that walking a mile \_\_\_\_ me, but now I run three miles every day.
- a. observed      b. prospered      c. exhausted      d. protested
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. It's hard to believe in a doctor who \_\_\_\_ his patients not to smoke, but who smokes himself.
- a. counsels      b. copes with      c. withdraws      d. exhausts
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The \_\_\_\_ of Luis's ear infections when he was a little boy was great, but he hasn't had one for years now.
- a. phrase      b. objective      c. frequency      d. conscience
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. "Remember that you \_\_\_\_ all of the people of our city," one man yelled to the mayor, "not just the rich ones."
- a. represent      b. detect      c. protest      d. thrive
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. It turned out that my son's interest in collecting stamps was only \_\_\_\_.
- He forgot about it after a couple of months.
- a. temporary      b. intense      c. external      d. transparent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. If I \_\_\_\_ a hair in my food, then I can't eat another bite of that food, even after I remove the hair.
- a. strive      b. evaluate      c. assume      d. detect
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. As much as I would love to call in sick to work and go the baseball game, my \_\_\_\_ won't let me.
- a. substance      b. conscience      c. phrase      d. interval
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Just because Donald is quiet in class, don't \_\_\_\_ that he is stupid.
- a. assume      b. protest      c. disrupt      d. withdraw
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. As she read in the living room, Anna became \_\_\_\_ of loud voices coming from her parents' room.
- a. appropriate      b. shallow      c. authentic      d. conscious
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. My daughter invited some friends over for dinner and then \_\_\_\_ my planning by telling me that one is allergic to eggs, another is allergic to milk, and the third is a vegetarian.
- a. prospered      b. complicated      c. thrived      d. detected

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. When they visited the coast, the Martins enjoyed a trip in a glass-bottomed boat. They looked through its \_\_\_\_ bottom and saw many fish and other sea creatures.  
a. transparent    b. random    c. remote    d. harsh
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. The hardware store sells \_\_\_\_ stones made of plastic that you can open and hide a house key in. Then you can hide the key by leaving the “stone” somewhere near your door.  
a. eligible    b. authentic    c. artificial    d. objective

### PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. After using the *external* part of onions and potatoes in a meal, I use the peels to make broth.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 15. As *incredible* as it seems, the Nile River in Africa has frozen over at least twice.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 16. The house’s *internal* appearance is neat, but inside, it’s a real mess.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 17. Drivers in our state must not exceed a *maximum* of sixty miles an hour.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 18. My only *objective* to Mimi is that spending time with her is more boring than watching paint dry.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 19. The play was so bad that we slipped out of the theater during the *interval* between the first and second acts.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 20. Joan’s sickness seemed to be getting better, but over the weekend she had a *remedy* and is now seriously ill.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 21. The lovely bushes and flowering trees certainly *detract* from the beauty of the neighborhood.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 22. Knowing that his children often bring home friends after a baseball game, Mr. Hendricks had the *foresight* to make extra hamburgers for dinner.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 23. The chickens *protest* loudly whenever someone takes their eggs out from under them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 24. Many people don’t eat much breakfast because their hunger in the morning is *intense*.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 25. Our boss is so *harsh* that he gives every employee an extra day off on his or her birthday.

<b>Score</b> (Number correct)    _____    × 4 = _____ %
---

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## UNIT THREE: Test 2

### PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. approximately	b. authentic	c. consistent	d. cope	e. disrupt
f. eligible	g. phrase	h. prosper	i. remote	j. shallow
k. substance	l. trait	m. withdraw		

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A swarm of bees \_\_\_\_ed the picnic, sending people running and yelling in every direction.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. One way to \_\_\_\_ with winter weather is to stay indoors, turn the heat up, play old Beach Boys records, and watch videotapes of Hawaiian hula dancers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When asked what \_\_\_\_ is most important in a boyfriend or girlfriend, many people answer, "A sense of humor."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. In order to have the peace and quiet he needed to finish his book, the writer moved to a \_\_\_\_ cabin where there were no people, no cars, and not even a telephone.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. A lemonade stand would \_\_\_\_ on this corner — hundreds of hot, thirsty people walk by every day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The librarian complained that someone had returned a book with a sticky \_\_\_\_ all over its cover.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. If someone tells you he can sell you an \_\_\_\_ diamond bracelet for twenty dollars, don't believe him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Do you have to be a high-school graduate to be \_\_\_\_ to join the Army?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The car sells for \_\_\_\_ fifteen thousand dollars; the exact price depends on what "extras" you order, such as power windows or a CD player.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. I don't think I'd like to live in a place where the weather is so \_\_\_\_ that there is never any change from day to day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Don't bury those carrot seeds too deep — just dig a \_\_\_\_ hole for each one and cover it with a small amount of soil.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. I had to \_\_\_\_ my offer to buy my friend's old car when I realized I couldn't afford automobile insurance.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. My grandfather usually spoke English, but he always greeted friends with the Spanish \_\_\_\_ "Qué pasa?" which means "What's happening?"

(Continues on next page)



## PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_\_ 14. Manuel is a hard-working person who always *strives* to do his best.
- \_\_\_\_ 15. Amanda was the *sole* person at the table who ate meat. Everyone else was a vegetarian.
- \_\_\_\_ 16. After being put in the sun and watered regularly, the once-sickly plant soon *thrived*.
- \_\_\_\_ 17. When I asked the traffic cop directions to the post office, he *evaluated* that it was just down the block.
- \_\_\_\_ 18. Seeing her best friend get off the train, Irene *observed* quickly down the sidewalk to give her a hug.
- \_\_\_\_ 19. My blood pressure is so high that I have scheduled a *random* appointment with my doctor.
- \_\_\_\_ 20. The little girl taught herself the *concept* of “right” and “left” by remembering, “I **write** with my **right** hand.”
- \_\_\_\_ 21. The families decided it would be too *practical* to eat in an expensive restaurant.
- \_\_\_\_ 22. I keep a couple of quarters in my pocket for *significant* purchases, such as a pack of gum.
- \_\_\_\_ 23. The letters “ski” are a *characteristic* part of many Polish names, such as Kwilinski and Paderewski.
- \_\_\_\_ 24. Because Linda is so shy, she usually *confronts* people rather than daring to face them and actually talk to them.
- \_\_\_\_ 25. It’s plain to see from the way Diane quarrels so often with her friends that she has lots of *tolerance* for other people’s opinions.

Score (Number correct) \_\_\_\_\_  $\times 4 =$  \_\_\_\_\_%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## UNIT THREE: Test 3

### PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

- |                              |                       |                             |                 |                                 |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| ___ 1. <b>assume</b>         | a) improve            | b) tire                     | c) manage       | d) take for granted             |
| ___ 2. <b>characteristic</b> | a) typical            | b) strong                   | c) important    | d) amazing                      |
| ___ 3. <b>concept</b>        | a) idea               | b) goal                     | c) period       | d) knowledge of right and wrong |
| ___ 4. <b>confront</b>       | a) interrupt          | b) take away from           | c) face boldly  | d) succeed                      |
| ___ 5. <b>conscience</b>     | a) respect for others | b) sense of right and wrong | c) feature      | d) how often something happens  |
| ___ 6. <b>cope with</b>      | a) judge              | b) remove                   | c) believe      | d) manage                       |
| ___ 7. <b>counsel</b>        | a) give advice to     | b) bring together           | c) send away    | d) search for                   |
| ___ 8. <b>detect</b>         | a) take from          | b) speak for                | c) stop briefly | d) discover                     |
| ___ 9. <b>disrupt</b>        | a) upset              | b) watch                    | c) tire         | d) complain                     |
| ___ 10. <b>eligible</b>      | a) important          | b) chosen                   | c) qualified    | d) amazing                      |
| ___ 11. <b>evaluate</b>      | a) judge              | b) try                      | c) grow         | d) take back                    |
| ___ 12. <b>foresight</b>     | a) purpose            | b) care in planning         | c) cure         | d) attention                    |
| ___ 13. <b>frequency</b>     | a) material           | b) goal                     | c) word group   | d) how often something happens  |
| ___ 14. <b>interval</b>      | a) time in between    | b) thought                  | c) system       | d) word group                   |
| ___ 15. <b>objective</b>     | a) goal               | b) respect                  | c) cure         | d) matter                       |
| ___ 16. <b>observe</b>       | a) decide             | b) succeed                  | c) give advice  | d) watch                        |
| ___ 17. <b>phrase</b>        | a) period of time     | b) shape                    | c) word group   | d) amount                       |
| ___ 18. <b>remote</b>        | a) not usual          | b) out-of-the-way           | c) believable   | d) able to be seen through      |
| ___ 19. <b>represent</b>     | a) speak for          | b) feel anger against       | c) make smaller | d) send again                   |
| ___ 20. <b>sole</b>          | a) outer              | b) best                     | c) large        | d) only                         |
| ___ 21. <b>substance</b>     | a) care               | b) general thought          | c) material     | d) knowledge                    |
| ___ 22. <b>tolerance</b>     | a) win                | b) possibility              | c) confusion    | d) lack of prejudice            |
| ___ 23. <b>trait</b>         | a) meeting            | b) story                    | c) plan         | d) feature                      |
| ___ 24. <b>transparent</b>   | a) fake               | b) amazing                  | c) proud        | d) able to be seen through      |
| ___ 25. <b>withdraw</b>      | a) write down         | b) take back                | c) shorten      | d) watch                        |

(Continues on next page)

**PART B: Antonyms**

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- \_\_\_\_ 26. **approximately**    a) always    b) useful    c) exactly    d) properly
- \_\_\_\_ 27. **artificial**    a) perfect    b) likeable    c) suitable    d) natural
- \_\_\_\_ 28. **authentic**    a) demanding    b) believable    c) sharp    d) fake
- \_\_\_\_ 29. **complicate**    a) make easy    b) speed up    c) pass over    d) take advice
- \_\_\_\_ 30. **conscious**    a) unqualified    b) unusual    c) unexpected    d) unaware
- \_\_\_\_ 31. **consistent**    a) gentle    b) changing    c) rude    d) weak
- \_\_\_\_ 32. **detract**    a) stay the same    b) add to    c) fail    d) rest
- \_\_\_\_ 33. **exhaust**    a) give energy to    b) explain    c) expect    d) get worse
- \_\_\_\_ 34. **external**    a) useless    b) harmful    c) inner    d) close
- \_\_\_\_ 35. **harsh**    a) planned    b) nearby    c) useful    d) kindly
- \_\_\_\_ 36. **incredible**    a) regular    b) not possible    c) easy to believe    d) disagreeable
- \_\_\_\_ 37. **intense**    a) accidental    b) weak    c) long-lasting    d) helpless
- \_\_\_\_ 38. **internal**    a) real    b) deep    c) honest    d) outer
- \_\_\_\_ 39. **maximum**    a) least possible    b) legal    c) exact    d) able
- \_\_\_\_ 40. **practical**    a) not sensible    b) not inside    c) not easy    d) not possible
- \_\_\_\_ 41. **prosper**    a) make easy    b) face    c) fail    d) help
- \_\_\_\_ 42. **protest**    a) put an end to    b) approve    c) give    d) grow stronger
- \_\_\_\_ 43. **random**    a) believable    b) not wanted    c) planned    d) pleasant
- \_\_\_\_ 44. **remedy**    a) thought    b) distance    c) purpose    d) disease
- \_\_\_\_ 45. **shallow**    a) deep    b) crowded    c) weak    d) least
- \_\_\_\_ 46. **significant**    a) not real    b) done on purpose    c) not important    d) not steady
- \_\_\_\_ 47. **strive**    a) give advice    b) put in    c) ask for    d) give up
- \_\_\_\_ 48. **temporary**    a) long-lasting    b) not qualified    c) weak    d) not typical
- \_\_\_\_ 49. **thrive**    a) know    b) argue    c) change    d) grow weak
- \_\_\_\_ 50. **triumph**    a) suggestion    b) patience    c) distance    d) loss

Score (Number correct) \_\_\_\_\_ × 2 = \_\_\_\_\_%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

# Unit Four

## Chapter 16

apparent	fulfill
automatic	influence
burden	security
economical	sympathize
extravagant	transfer

## Chapter 17

appropriate	emotion
bewilder	fiction
communicate	investigate
deceive	legible
earnest	theory

## Chapter 18

assure	humiliate
crucial	impulse
distract	perceive
extraordinary	revive
hostile	timid

## Chapter 19

abandon	function
alert	idle
circumstances	overcome
devote	primary
dominate	theme

## Chapter 20

disregard	monotonous
excerpt	obtain
exclude	prey
hinder	seize
misleading	severe

## Unit Four: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| _____ 1. <b>apparent</b>       | a) impossible to see with the naked eye    b) made up of many small parts<br>c) obvious    d) hard to understand |
| _____ 2. <b>automatic</b>      | a) easily moved    b) operating by itself    c) unable to change<br>d) improving over time                       |
| _____ 3. <b>burden</b>         | a) hardship    b) joy    c) reply    d) payment  |
| _____ 4. <b>economical</b>     | a) wasteful    b) intelligent    c) thrifty    d) forgiving  |
| _____ 5. <b>extravagant</b>    | a) critical    b) wasteful    c) wise    d) messy  |
| _____ 6. <b>fulfill</b>        | a) carry out    b) fail at a task    c) understand another's feelings    d) give advice                          |
| _____ 7. <b>influence</b>      | a) misunderstand    b) excuse    c) be offended    d) persuade   |
| _____ 8. <b>security</b>       | a) protection    b) loneliness    c) immaturity    d) ridicule   |
| _____ 9. <b>sympathize</b>     | a) share feeling    b) object    c) refuse    d) cooperate   |
| _____ 10. <b>transfer</b>      | a) find fault    b) discontinue    c) send from a place    d) inspect  |
| _____ 11. <b>appropriate</b>   | a) rude    b) impulsive    c) unwise    d) proper  |
| _____ 12. <b>bewilder</b>      | a) calm    b) confuse    c) accept    d) explain   |
| _____ 13. <b>communicate</b>   | a) anger    b) inform    c) hurry    d) mistake  |
| _____ 14. <b>deceive</b>       | a) mislead    b) encourage    c) prevent    d) forbid  |
| _____ 15. <b>earnest</b>       | a) dishonest    b) wealthy    c) pleasant    d) sincere  |
| _____ 16. <b>emotion</b>       | a) feeling    b) eyesight    c) movement    d) payment   |
| _____ 17. <b>fiction</b>       | a) made up    b) exciting    c) violent    d) romantic   |
| _____ 18. <b>investigate</b>   | a) abandon    b) make secure    c) examine    d) insist  |
| _____ 19. <b>legible</b>       | a) heavy    b) clear    c) empty    d) noisy   |
| _____ 20. <b>theory</b>        | a) opportunity    b) guess    c) certainty    d) excuse  |
| _____ 21. <b>assure</b>        | a) argue with    b) remind    c) agree with    d) promise  |
| _____ 22. <b>crucial</b>       | a) useless    b) ugly    c) important    d) famous   |
| _____ 23. <b>distract</b>      | a) make sad    b) support    c) cause to disappear    d) cause to turn away                                      |
| _____ 24. <b>extraordinary</b> | a) left over    b) unusual    c) normal    d) very simple  |
| _____ 25. <b>hostile</b>       | a) unfriendly    b) frightened    c) important    d) growing   |

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_\_ 26. **humiliate**      a) misunderstand    b) embarrass    c) defeat    d) excite  
 \_\_\_\_ 27. **impulse**      a) sudden desire    b) lack of movement    c) difficulty    d) heartbeat  
 \_\_\_\_ 28. **perceive**      a) strain    b) notice    c) lie to    d) prepare  
 \_\_\_\_ 29. **revive**      a) leave alone    b) say again    c) bring back to life    d) embarrass  
 \_\_\_\_ 30. **timid**      a) athletic    b) full of energy    c) careless    d) shy  
 \_\_\_\_ 31. **abandon**      a) stop doing    b) hold onto    c) bring together    d) begin  
 \_\_\_\_ 32. **alert**      a) bad-smelling    b) lazy    c) strong    d) fully awake  
 \_\_\_\_ 33. **circumstances**    a) feelings    b) facts    c) circles    d) desires  
 \_\_\_\_ 34. **devote**      a) take away    b) look over    c) give oneself    d) show a preference  
 \_\_\_\_ 35. **dominate**      a) be a part of    b) be a leader in    c) drop out of    d) lose interest in  
 \_\_\_\_ 36. **function**      a) purpose    b) topic    c) fact    d) part  
 \_\_\_\_ 37. **idle**      a) frightened    b) full of energy    c) lonely    d) not active  
 \_\_\_\_ 38. **overcome**      a) be a winner over    b) leave behind    c) see clearly    d) lose to  
 \_\_\_\_ 39. **primary**      a) easy    b) unimportant    c) entertaining    d) main  
 \_\_\_\_ 40. **theme**      a) main idea    b) difficulty    c) direction    d) river  
 \_\_\_\_ 41. **disregard**      a) look at    b) get in the way of    c) admire    d) ignore  
 \_\_\_\_ 42. **excerpt**      a) part    b) prize    c) sudden decision    d) trip  
 \_\_\_\_ 43. **exclude**      a) invite    b) bring into    c) keep out    d) tire out  
 \_\_\_\_ 44. **hinder**      a) find out    b) interfere with    c) bring into    d) put behind  
 \_\_\_\_ 45. **misleading**      a) serious    b) straight    c) giving the wrong idea    d) staying close to  
 \_\_\_\_ 46. **monotonous**      a) loud    b) dull    c) pleasant    d) messy  
 \_\_\_\_ 47. **obtain**      a) get    b) protect    c) spoil    d) move  
 \_\_\_\_ 48. **prey**      a) victim    b) leader    c) struggle    d) prayer  
 \_\_\_\_ 49. **seize**      a) tell    b) stare    c) strain    d) grab  
 \_\_\_\_ 50. **severe**      a) boring    b) new    c) serious    d) exciting

**SCORE:** (Number correct) \_\_\_\_\_  $\times 2 =$  \_\_\_\_\_ %

# CHAPTER 16

apparent  
automatic  
burden  
economical  
extravagant

fulfill  
influence  
security  
sympathize  
transfer

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

- 1 **apparent**  
/ə'pærənt/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Apparent* means

- Marcie's smile made it **apparent** that she had done well on the test.
  - It's **apparent** that Leon and Bess have settled their quarrel, since they are dating steadily again.
- a. helpful.                      b. clear.                      c. secret.

- 2 **automatic**  
/ɔ:tə'mætɪk/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Automatic* means

- Our new coffeemaker is **automatic**. We set it at night, and it turns on by itself in the morning.
  - Before the **automatic** washing machine, laundering clothes was not so easy.
- a. self-operating.                      b. unusual.                      c. low in cost.

- 3 **burden**  
/'bɜ:dən/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Burden* means

- Although others think raising a handicapped child must be a **burden**, my neighbor says she has found joy, not hardship, in caring for her son.
  - At first Louie was proud that he had stolen the money, but in time, his crime became a great **burden** to him.
- a. freedom.                      b. protection.                      c. heavy load.

- 4 **economical**  
/i:kə'nɒmɪkəl/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Economical* means

- It's usually more **economical** to buy food and soap in large packages. Smaller packages will cost more per ounce.
  - To decide which car is most **economical**, compare prices, gas mileage, and repair costs.
- a. difficult.                      b. money-saving.                      c. easy to see.

- 5 **extravagant**  
/ɪk'strævəgənt/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Extravagant* means

- I think it's **extravagant** to buy a prom dress that will be worn only once, so I borrowed one from a friend.
  - Rhoda's budget is so tight that she felt it would be **extravagant** to buy herself a ten-dollar pair of earrings.
- a. not effective.                      b. obvious.                      c. spending too much.

- 6 **fulfill**  
/fʊl'fɪl/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Fulfill* means

- One day, Chen hopes to **fulfill** his dream of visiting China again and renewing ties with his family there.
  - Jill doesn't like her job, but she promised to stay with it at least one year, and she plans to **fulfill** that promise.
- a. repeat.                      b. carry out.                      c. have an effect on.

- 7 **influence**  
/ˈɪnfluəns/  
– verb
- My father thinks my friends **influence** me too much. He says they are the reason that I study so little and party so often.
  - Do advertisements **influence** what you buy?
- \_\_\_ *Influence* means      a. delay.      b. protect.      c. affect.
- 8 **security**  
/sɪˈkjʊərəti/  
– noun
- For nighttime **security**, the owner of the jewelry shop turns on a burglar alarm.
  - People with homes near the river like the **security** of flood insurance.
- \_\_\_ *Security* means      a. hardship.      b. expense.      c. safety.
- 9 **sympathize**  
/sɪmpəˈθaɪz/  
– verb
- The whole town **sympathized** with the family whose house burned down.
  - To show he **sympathized** with Mrs. Jackson when her husband died, Scott sent her flowers and a card.
- \_\_\_ *Sympathized with* means      a. felt sorry for.      b. sent for.      c. talked to.
- 10 **transfer**  
/trænsˈfɜː(r)/  
– verb
- Before I can paint the bookcase, I have to **transfer** all the books into boxes.
  - In April, the Army will **transfer** Jamal from a base in South Carolina to one in Virginia.
- \_\_\_ *Transfer* means      a. reach.      b. move.      c. see.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Costing or spending little; thrifty
- \_\_\_\_\_ To move or send from one place to another
- \_\_\_\_\_ Moving or operating by itself
- \_\_\_\_\_ To have an effect on
- \_\_\_\_\_ To feel or express sorrow or pity for
- \_\_\_\_\_ To carry out; achieve; do
- \_\_\_\_\_ A hardship; something difficult to bear
- \_\_\_\_\_ Obvious; easy to see
- \_\_\_\_\_ Protection; freedom from danger, fear, or worry
- \_\_\_\_\_ Spending much more than is necessary or wise; wasteful

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.



➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. apparent	b. automatic	c. burden	d. economical	e. extravagant
f. fulfill	g. influence	h. security	i. sympathize	j. transfer

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. My boss intends to assign me to another office. In other words, he wants to \_\_\_\_ me there.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. A \_\_\_\_ may be a physical or a mental hardship, or both.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Political candidates try to \_\_\_\_ elections with numerous ads.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. An \_\_\_\_ person enjoys spending a lot of money.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. When we've had the same difficult experience as someone else, it's easier for us to \_\_\_\_ with him or her.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Because Kira was smiling, it was \_\_\_\_ that she was happy about something.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. When you make an agreement with people, they expect you to \_\_\_\_ your part of the deal.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. After people are robbed, they often feel a greater need for \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. An \_\_\_\_ person doesn't like to waste money.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Do you think there will ever be a fully \_\_\_\_ car, one that needs no driver?

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. Because we are moving, our children will have to \_\_\_\_ to different schools. I can \_\_\_\_ with them because I went through the same experience as a child.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. \_\_\_\_ yard lights, which go on by themselves at dark, can add to the \_\_\_\_ of a home.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. Clark had to think of an \_\_\_\_ way to \_\_\_\_ his promise to give each of his twelve nieces and nephews a gift, so he baked them each a pie.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. From the young hiker's slowed walk, it was \_\_\_\_ that his large backpack had become a \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. Having a credit card has \_\_\_\_d Barry in a sad way. He has become so \_\_\_\_ that he now has a closet full of more clothes than he can wear — and a huge credit-card bill.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>automation</b> , <i>noun</i>	The use of machines instead of people or animals
b. <b>economize</b> , <i>verb</i>	To cut down on spending
c. <b>influential</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Having the power to affect someone or something
d. <b>insecure</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not safe; not protected enough
e. <b>sympathy</b> , <i>noun</i>	Pity; sorrow for another

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Walking through a dangerous neighborhood alone at night makes most people feel \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The newlyweds \_\_\_\_ by using coupons and buying secondhand clothes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Having great \_\_\_\_ for the flood victims, people throughout the country sent money to help them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_ has greatly affected farming; for instance, the workhorse has been replaced by the tractor.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The *Daily Mirror* is such an \_\_\_\_ newspaper that the political candidates it supports almost always win.

f. <b>economy</b> , <i>noun</i>	The business affairs of a region, town, or country
g. <b>fulfillment</b> , <i>noun</i>	Achievement; completion
h. <b>secure</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Safe; protected
i. <b>sympathetically</b> , <i>adverb</i>	In a kindly way
j. <b>unfulfilled</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not done; not achieved; not carried out

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. For the young gymnast, competing at the Olympics was the \_\_\_\_ of a lifelong dream.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. When a factory closes down, it affects the whole town's \_\_\_\_, as the laid-off workers have little money to spend in local stores.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Dad always buys more groceries than we need; it makes him feel \_\_\_\_ to know the cupboards are full of food.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The minister spoke to the crying child very \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The carpenters promised to fix the garage door four weeks ago, but so far, their promise is \_\_\_\_.

## ➤ Word Parts

A. The suffix *-ment* often means “the result, state, act, or process of \_\_\_\_.”

**Examples:** *fulfillment* — the result of fulfilling

*enjoyment* — the state of enjoying

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. astonishment°

b. fulfillment

c. management

d. replacement

e. statement

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The magician’s surprising act filled us with a *state of being astonished°*.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The *act of replacing* of our old kitchen floor was not easy. First we had to tear the old floor out before the new one could be put in.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. It is obvious that the *process of managing* of this company is excellent. The company is very successful, and the workers are very happy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. For me, a small home in the country would be the *result of fulfilling* of a dream.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Kareem likes to study for tests with another person. He says that the *act of stating* of an idea out loud to someone else helps him remember it better.

B. The suffixes *-ly* and *-ally* mean “in a certain way.”

**Examples:** *economical* — thrifty

*economically* — in a thrifty way

*secure* — safe

*securely* — in a safe way

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. consistently°

g. economically°

h. exactly

i. extravagantly°

j. securely

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Ralph may not be the perfect worker, but at least he is steady about one thing — he is \_\_\_\_ late for work each day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Before leaving on vacation, make sure the doors and windows are closed \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Wanting to impress his date, Dan spent money \_\_\_\_ on lobster, champagne, and a hired limousine.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. If a math answer is not \_\_\_\_ right, you may not get full credit for it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The three families got a new lawn mower \_\_\_\_ by buying it together, then sharing it.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. A Mismatched Couple

a. **burden**b. **economical**c. **extravagant**d. **security**e. **sympathize**

Stacy and Ken have completely different attitudes° toward money. She is (1)\_\_\_\_\_ to an extreme, always trying to get the best price on even the smallest purchase. Ken, on the other hand, is very (2)\_\_\_\_\_. He loves to spend money on anything that catches his eye. If there's a dime in his pocket, he feels that it's a (3)\_\_\_\_\_, as hard to carry around as a heavy load. He'll find something to spend it on just to be rid of it. Knowing she has money in case of accident or illness gives Stacy a feeling of (4)\_\_\_\_\_, but Ken doesn't worry about the future. Each is puzzled by the other's "strange" behavior. Stacy sees Ken as wasteful and irresponsible, and Ken calls Stacy cheap. He can't (5)\_\_\_\_\_ with her when she's worried about an empty bank account. Since they have very little tolerance° for each other's views on money, no one was surprised when these two got divorced.

### B. A Campaign to Become Class President

f. **apparent**g. **automatic**h. **fulfill**i. **influence**j. **transfer**

In her senior year, Holly wanted very much to be elected class president. But she knew that the other girl who was competing for the office was much better known and had more experience in student government. As a result, Holly began to do all she could to (6)\_\_\_\_\_ her classmates so that they would vote for her. She found herself promising them anything they asked for. "If I'm elected," she told one student, "I will see that the school puts in (7)\_\_\_\_\_ doors to make it easy to enter when our arms are full of books." To another, she said that a hot tub would be installed in the school gym. She promised a third student that he could (8)\_\_\_\_\_ to the school across town that his girlfriend attended. As the election drew near, it became (9)\_\_\_\_\_ that Holly had a good chance of winning. This scared her because she realized that she could not (10)\_\_\_\_\_ all her promises. Finally, she quit the race, saying she couldn't maintain° her grades and serve as class president too. She felt foolish for having let her desire to win run away with her good sense.

# CHAPTER 17

appropriate  
bewilder  
communicate  
deceive  
earnest

emotion  
fiction  
investigate  
legible  
theory

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **appropriate**  
/ə'prəʊpriət/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Appropriate* means

- While it's **appropriate** to scream at a football game, such behavior is not considered proper at the ballet.
  - Hiking boots aren't **appropriate** for jogging — they are too stiff and heavy.
- a. legal.                                      b. unusual.                                      c. correct.

2 **bewilder**  
/bi'wildə(r)/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Bewilder* means

- The large new school at first **bewildered** Chung, but after a day or two, getting around was no longer confusing to him.
  - My grandmother's poor health **bewildered** her doctor until he found out she wasn't taking her medicines.
- a. to calm.                                      b. to puzzle.                                      c. to attract.

3 **communicate**  
/kə'mju:nikeɪt/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Communicate* means

- Alice and I rarely see each other, but we **communicate** often by sending letters and making phone calls.
  - Today, many people **communicate** with each other by using the electronic mail service on their computers.
- a. to call.                                      b. to exchange information.                                      c. to visit.

4 **deceive**  
/di'si:v/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Deceive* means

- Linda **deceived** Jason by dating him without telling him that she was married.
  - A business owner who tries to **deceive** customers should be reported to the police.
- a. to help.                                      b. to find.                                      c. to fool.

5 **earnest**  
/'ɜ:nɪst/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Earnest* means

- I like our new baby sitter because she is very **earnest**; she clearly takes her job very seriously.
  - Jimmy seemed **earnest** when he promised to clean the windows by Friday, so I was surprised to see he hadn't done them.
- a. confused.                                      b. quiet.                                      c. serious.

6 **emotion**  
/ɪ'məʊʃən/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Emotion* means

- Stan rarely shows his **emotions**. We have to guess what he is really feeling.
  - Many people have trouble talking about their **emotions**, especially anger and fear.
- a. feeling.                                      b. explanation.                                      c. movement.

7 **fiction**  
/'fɪkʃən/  
– noun

- One of Mark Twain's most amusing pieces of **fiction** is his story about a Connecticut man who travels back to the time of King Arthur.
- Some newspapers print obvious **fiction**, such as, "Nine-year-old girl has triplets who weigh 100 pounds more than she does!"

\_\_\_ *Fiction* means

- a. news.                      b. made-up writing.                      c. facts.

8 **investigate**  
/ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/  
– verb

- The FBI has been called in to **investigate** the disappearance of the baby from the hospital.
- When I heard a noise downstairs at 3 a.m., I lay still in bed, too frightened to get up and **investigate** the situation.

\_\_\_ *Investigate* means

- a. look into.                      b. delay.                      c. exchange.

9 **legible**  
/'ledʒəbl/  
– adjective

- My father used to make me rewrite my sloppy homework. "I can barely read this," he would say. "Make it **legible**."
- The fancy script on that new restaurant sign isn't very **legible**. Does it say "Peretti's," "Perelli's," or "Pepetti's"?

\_\_\_ *Legible* means

- a. easy to believe.                      b. easy to read.                      c. easy to prove.

10 **theory**  
/'θiəri/  
– noun

- According to the **theory** of evolution, plants and animals have developed in ways that help them do well in their environment.
- The police's **theory** was that the killer was a short man with dark hair, but the murderer turned out to be a blond woman wearing a dark wig.

\_\_\_ *Theory* means

- a. action.                      b. explanation.                      c. question.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

- \_\_\_\_\_ To exchange or give information
- \_\_\_\_\_ To confuse; puzzle
- \_\_\_\_\_ Serious and sincere
- \_\_\_\_\_ A strong feeling
- \_\_\_\_\_ A statement that explains events or facts; an explanation, often unproven
- \_\_\_\_\_ Clear enough to be read
- \_\_\_\_\_ Literature consisting of imaginary stories; anything made up
- \_\_\_\_\_ Proper; suited to a certain use or purpose
- \_\_\_\_\_ To make (someone) believe something that is not true
- \_\_\_\_\_ To explore or examine carefully in order to learn the facts

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. appropriate	b. bewildered	c. communicate	d. deceive	e. earnest
f. emotion	g. fiction	h. investigate	i. legible	j. theory

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. At the fancy dinner, Sheila watched her hostess to see which fork was \_\_\_\_\_ for each course.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Charlotte's sweet smiles don't \_\_\_\_\_ me. I know that she really dislikes me.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Dolphins \_\_\_\_\_ with one another through a language of squeaks and grunts.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. At first, the many noises, flashing lights, and whirling rides at the fair \_\_\_\_\_ed the children.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Murphy has a \_\_\_\_\_ about life. He believes that everything that can possibly go wrong, will.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. When we go on our walks, my dog \_\_\_\_\_s every bush and tree we come across.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Ten years ago, I carved my initials in a tree. Recently I was surprised to see that they were still \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. When Gordon begged his boss for another chance, he seemed so \_\_\_\_\_ that his employer decided to give him his job back.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. When I want to relax, I read love stories, mysteries, and other kinds of \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Which do you think is the more powerful \_\_\_\_\_, love or hate?

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. Agatha Christie wrote wonderful works of \_\_\_\_\_ about Miss Marple, a woman who loved to \_\_\_\_\_ crimes the police could not solve.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. Some people believe the \_\_\_\_\_ that you can teach yourself to write well with either hand, but when I use my left hand, what I write is not \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. The lost little girl spoke no English, so the police officer's attempts to \_\_\_\_\_ with her only \_\_\_\_\_ed her more.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. The man claiming to have lost his wallet seemed so \_\_\_\_\_ that I believed him and gave him money, but when I saw him doing the same thing a week later, I knew he had \_\_\_\_\_d me.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. Many people feel a powerful mixture of \_\_\_\_\_s at special events; for example, it is considered \_\_\_\_\_ to cry at weddings, even though it is a happy time.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>bewilderment</b> , <i>noun</i>	Confusion
b. <b>communication</b> , <i>noun</i>	Making information known
c. <b>deception</b> , <i>noun</i>	An act of making someone believe something that is not true; a lie or trick
d. <b>investigator</b> , <i>noun</i>	A person who studies facts or a situation in order to learn the truth
e. <b>nonfiction</b> , <i>noun</i>	Writing that is about real life, not made-up ideas

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Radio, television, newspapers, letters, and, of course, conversation, are all forms of \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The museum officials who paid millions of dollars for the fake Picasso painting were angry and embarrassed when they discovered the \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When Mr. Burns's wife became suspicious, she hired an \_\_\_\_, who learned that Mr. Burns had three wives in three different cities. When she confronted° him with this fact, she had some harsh° things to say.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Truman Capote's book *In Cold Blood: The True Story of a Multiple Murder* is a piece of \_\_\_\_ that tells the story of the 1959 killing of a farm family in Kansas.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Imagine my \_\_\_\_ when I came home to what I thought was an empty house and heard voices call out, "Surprise! Happy Birthday!"

f. <b>emotional</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Having to do with feelings
g. <b>fictional</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Made-up; not true
h. <b>illegible</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not able to be read
i. <b>investigation</b> , <i>noun</i>	The act of examining or exploring something
j. <b>theorize</b> , <i>verb</i>	To think up a possible explanation for something

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Professor Chaplin talks too quickly. When I try to take notes on her lectures, I have to hurry so much that my writing is \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Certain musical notes and chords make many people feel like crying. Why is it that music can have such a strong \_\_\_\_ effect?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The reporters spent a year on an \_\_\_\_ to prepare for their series of articles about why the city's crime rate is so high.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Over the years, many people have claimed to see a huge animal in a lake in Scotland; some people \_\_\_\_ that it is some sort of dinosaur.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. In the novel *Lost Horizon*, the author wrote of the \_\_\_\_ land of Shangri-La, where people stay young for hundreds of years.



## ➤ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. **bewilder**

- a. make certain
- c. insist

- b. release
- d. confuse

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. **communicate**

- a. hide
- c. remove

- b. make known
- d. forget

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. **emotion**

- a. feeling
- c. excuse

- b. energy
- d. movement

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. **investigate**

- a. puzzle
- c. inspect

- b. write
- d. fool

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. **theory**

- a. agreement
- c. explanation

- b. problem
- d. question

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. **appropriate**

- a. not healthy
- c. not believable

- b. not proper
- d. not ready

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. **deceive**

- a. stay away from
- c. tell the truth to

- b. argue
- d. find

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. **earnest**

- a. not sincere
- c. not accurate

- b. unusual
- d. not perfect

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. **fiction**

- a. justice
- c. reason

- b. ability
- d. fact

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. **legible**

- a. not for sale
- c. not on purpose

- b. not lasting
- d. not readable

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. The Famous Detective

a. **deceive**  
d. **investigate**

b. **emotion**  
e. **theory**

c. **fiction**

One of the most famous characters from the world of (1)\_\_\_\_\_ is Sherlock Holmes, created by the writer Arthur Conan Doyle. Holmes first appeared in a story Doyle wrote in 1887. It was called “A Study in Scarlet.” Holmes was a detective. No criminal, no matter how clever, could (2)\_\_\_\_\_ him for long. Rather than being affected by (3)\_\_\_\_\_s such as fear or hate, he used his great powers of thinking to solve crimes. As he (4)\_\_\_\_\_d crimes, he noticed important small details that were not apparent° to others. Then it would not be long before he developed a perfect (5)\_\_\_\_\_ to explain the crime.

### B. Why So Quiet?

f. **appropriate**  
i. **earnest**

g. **bewilder**  
j. **legible**

h. **communicate**

I still remember my first day in first grade. My first-grade teacher probably does, too. I had grown up in a very large, very noisy family. Everybody yelled, all the time. It wasn't because we were angry. There were just so many of us that we thought it was the only way to (6)\_\_\_\_\_. I didn't realize that our characteristic° loudness wasn't typical of all families. So I went into school believing that when you wanted to be heard, the (7)\_\_\_\_\_ thing to do was yell your head off. My teacher was a very gentle person. She talked slowly and never, ever raised her voice. I remember her writing her name on the board in large, (8)\_\_\_\_\_ letters and saying, “My name is Mrs. Henderson. Can you say ‘Mrs. Henderson,’ boys and girls?” My shy classmates whispered, “Mrs. Henderson.” I shouted, “MRS. HENDERSON!!” at the top of my lungs (I don't exaggerate° — I was really loud). Throughout the day, my classmates continued to whisper, and I continued to shout. By the end of the first day, school had totally (9)\_\_\_\_\_ed me. I was so confused that I thought I had been assigned to the wrong class. I went home and told my parents I wanted to be in class with people who “talked right.” I wasn't kidding — I was completely (10)\_\_\_\_\_. It took a couple of weeks for me to figure out how to fit in with my quieter classmates.

# CHAPTER 18

**assure**  
**crucial**  
**distract**  
**extraordinary**  
**hostile**

**humiliate**  
**impulse**  
**perceive**  
**revive**  
**timid**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **assure**  
/ə'ʃʊə(r)/  
- verb

- If you leave jewelry in your hotel room, the hotel cannot **assure** you that it will be safe.
- I asked the salesclerk, "Can you **assure** me that this watch is really waterproof?"

\_\_\_ *Assure* means

- a. to remind.                      b. to agree with.                      c. to promise.

2 **crucial**  
/'kru:ʃəl/  
- adjective

- The trial had to stop when a **crucial** witness suddenly disappeared.
- Protein is a **crucial** part of a healthy diet.

\_\_\_ *Crucial* means

- a. rare.                      b. necessary.                      c. useless.

3 **distract**  
/'dis'trækt/  
- verb

- I have trouble studying when noises from outside **distract** me.
- The children made funny faces at the actress, trying to **distract** her as she performed her part.

\_\_\_ *Distract* means

- a. to frighten greatly.                      b. to draw away the attention of.                      c. to give support to.

4 **extraordinary**  
/'ɪk'strɔ:dənəri/  
- adjective

- The restaurant made **extraordinary** attempts to attract new customers, even giving away free meals on certain days.
- The cancer patient inspired others with the **extraordinary** courage she showed in dealing with her illness.

\_\_\_ *Extraordinary* means

- a. unfriendly.                      b. normal.                      c. very unusual.

5 **hostile**  
/'hɒstail/  
- adjective

- The **hostile** crowd threw tomatoes and eggs at the speaker.
- The cat acted **hostile** towards the new kitten, snarling and spitting at it.

\_\_\_ *Hostile* means

- a. fearful.                      b. unfriendly.                      c. embarrassed.

6 **humiliate**  
/'hju:miliət/  
- verb

- Good teachers do not **humiliate** students for making mistakes by calling them names or holding up their work for everyone to see.
- In dreams, people often **humiliate** themselves by doing things like going outdoors without their clothing on.

\_\_\_ *Humiliate* means

- a. to shame.                      b. to show off.                      c. to misunderstand.

**7 impulse**  
 /'ɪmpʌls/  
 – noun

- People who go food shopping when they are hungry often get an **impulse** to buy something they don't really need.
- Carmen had planned on staying home alone, but at the last minute she had an **impulse** to phone her new neighbors and invite them to come over that evening for coffee and cake.

\_\_\_ *Impulse* means

- a. unplanned desire.                      b. view.                      c. fear.

**8 perceive**  
 /pə'si:v/  
 – verb

- I **perceive** from the wonderful smell that someone is barbecuing ribs.
- Hawks have such good eyesight that they can **perceive** a tiny mouse from hundreds of feet in the air.

\_\_\_ *Perceive* means

- a. to remember.                      b. to include.                      c. to notice.

**9 revive**  
 /rɪ'vaɪv/  
 – verb

- If you've lost all desire to learn biology, Professor Berg, who is a wonderful teacher, will **revive** your interest in that subject.
- No matter how tired our dog is, the question "Want to go for a walk?" will **revive** him.

\_\_\_ *Revive* means

- a. to show.                      b. to bring back to life.                      c. to embarrass.

**10 timid**  
 /'tɪmɪd/  
 – adjective

- When her parents tried to introduce her to guests, the **timid** child hid under the table.
- Ever since he almost drowned in a boating accident, Jared has been **timid** about going in the water.

\_\_\_ *Timid* means

- a. frightened.                      b. careless.                      c. full of energy.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ To make (someone) sure about something; tell with certainty
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Fearful or shy; lacking in self-confidence
3. \_\_\_\_\_ To make ashamed; embarrass
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Extremely important
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Unfriendly; having or showing ill will
6. \_\_\_\_\_ To give new energy, spirit, or strength
7. \_\_\_\_\_ A sudden urge to do something
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Beyond the ordinary; special
9. \_\_\_\_\_ To cause to turn away from what one was paying attention to
10. \_\_\_\_\_ To be or to become aware of through one's senses; see, hear, feel, taste, or smell

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. assure	b. crucial	c. distract	d. extraordinary	e. hostile
f. humiliate	g. impulse	h. perceive	i. revive	j. timid

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Bullies \_\_\_\_ other people in order to make themselves feel powerful.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The football game on TV \_\_\_\_ed Tyrell from his homework.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. My boss \_\_\_\_s me that I will get a raise soon.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The flowers in the garden were beginning to droop in the dry weather, but a heavy rain shower soon \_\_\_\_d them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Grocery store managers often place candy bars, combs, and other small, inexpensive items near the checkout, hoping that shoppers will have an \_\_\_\_ to buy them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. To succeed at a job interview, it is \_\_\_\_ that you arrive on time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Because parents know their children so well, they can often \_\_\_\_ that the children are not feeling well just by looking at them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Two of my coworkers are very \_\_\_\_ toward each other; their unfriendly relationship makes work difficult for others as well.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Thea felt too \_\_\_\_ to raise her hand when the magician asked for volunteers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The newspaper carried a story about an \_\_\_\_ woman who uses a wheelchair and is still a terrific tennis player.

➤ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. When Len's boss \_\_\_\_d him in front of his coworkers, he felt a sudden \_\_\_\_ to grab the man's necktie and snip it off with scissors.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. Once I began to \_\_\_\_ the aroma of fried chicken, I stopped doing my homework because I was so \_\_\_\_ed by the wonderful smell.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. The builders know it is \_\_\_\_ that the bathroom be finished before our visitors arrive next week, and they have \_\_\_\_d us the work will be done.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. When Sandra got the chance to work with an \_\_\_\_ coach — one who had coached many champions — it \_\_\_\_d her dream of someday competing in the Olympics.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. The more \_\_\_\_ the angry, impatient bus driver became, the more he frightened the \_\_\_\_ little girl who had lost her bus ticket.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>assurance</b> , <i>noun</i>	A promise
b. <b>distraction</b> , <i>noun</i>	Something that draws one's attention in another direction
c. <b>humiliation</b> , <i>noun</i>	Shame; embarrassment
d. <b>reassure</b> , <i>verb</i>	To make less fearful or worried
e. <b>revival</b> , <i>noun</i>	A new presentation of an old play, opera, etc.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Although the company was sold, the new owner \_\_\_\_d the workers that they would not lose their jobs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The wall between the two theaters is thin, so moviegoers have to put up with the \_\_\_\_ of hearing the other movie going on next door.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Can you give me your \_\_\_\_ that my car will be fixed today?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. I'd like to see a \_\_\_\_ of the musical *Peter Pan* with Whitney Houston playing the part of Tinkerbell.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. During his cooking demonstration, Chris experienced the \_\_\_\_ of dropping a dozen eggs on the floor in front of his entire class.

f. <b>hostility</b> , <i>noun</i>	Unfriendliness; anger
g. <b>impulsive</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Likely to take action quickly, without much thought
h. <b>perception</b> , <i>noun</i>	Becoming aware through use of the senses; awareness
i. <b>perceptive</b> , <i>verb</i>	Quick to notice things and understand situations
j. <b>timidity</b> , <i>noun</i>	Shyness; fear; lack of confidence

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Jessie is often \_\_\_\_\_. She does things without thinking — such as suddenly painting her kitchen purple — and then is sorry.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Animals' \_\_\_\_ of colors differs from people's ability to see colors. For example, bees cannot see red, but they can see ultraviolet light.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Although Rita said, "I forgive you," her voice was so full of \_\_\_\_ that it was clear she wasn't earnest°. She wasn't ready to forgive.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. A good detective is very \_\_\_\_\_, not missing a detail as he investigates° a crime.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. As a teenager, I often had to deal with \_\_\_\_\_. I would frequently stay in my room rather than speak to someone I didn't know well.

## Word Parts

A. The suffix *-ity* means “the quality or state of being \_\_\_\_.”

**Examples:** *timid* — shy

*timidity* — the quality or state of being shy

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

a. **brutality**

b. **generosity**

c. **hostility**

d. **security**

e. **timidity**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Mrs. Lee likes the \_\_\_\_ of living in an apartment that's on the tenth floor, where no thieves can enter through the windows.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Everyone was amazed by the \_\_\_\_ of the man who won a huge lottery prize and then gave it all away to charity.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. There are laws to protect animals from \_\_\_\_; it is against the law to beat or otherwise harm them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Ever since Margo asked Rose's boyfriend out on a date, there has been \_\_\_\_ between the two women.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. If you suffer from \_\_\_\_, you can learn to be less shy through practice. Every day, try to do one brave thing, such as speaking up at work or starting a conversation.

B. The suffixes *-able* and *-ible* can mean “able to be \_\_\_\_.”

**Examples:** *perceive* — to notice through one's senses

*perceptible* — able to be noticed through use of the senses

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **manageable**

g. **perceptible**

h. **readable**

i. **transferable**

j. **usable**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Nadia's handwriting is so bad that it is usually not even \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. If you decide to leave this college and go to another, you may lose some credits — some of your credits may not be \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. I have tons of homework to do this weekend, but it is \_\_\_\_\_. If I use my time well, I can handle it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The odor of fried fish is \_\_\_\_ in the house even hours after we've had dinner.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. These bananas are too ripe, but they are still \_\_\_\_ for banana bread. You could also freeze them and utilize<sup>o</sup> them later in fruit drinks.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Fear of Speaking

a. distract

b. hostile

c. humiliate

d. impulse

e. timid

Some people are afraid of spiders. Others fear heights. But for many people, the scariest thing of all is having to speak in front of a group of strangers. Even people who are not usually (1)\_\_\_\_\_ often have an intense° fear of speaking in public. They often imagine that the audience will be (2)\_\_\_\_\_, even when it is actually friendly. Because they are so sure that they will (3)\_\_\_\_\_ themselves, they usually manage to do just that. They are so awkward° when they walk to the front of the room that they almost trip over their own feet. When they begin to speak, their hands flutter, causing the papers they are holding to shake loudly. This annoying noise (4)\_\_\_\_\_s the audience from what the speakers are trying to say. Embarrassed by their poor performance, the unfortunate speakers have to fight the (5)\_\_\_\_\_ to crawl under a chair and hide. One of the best things people like this can do for themselves is to take a course in public speaking. Even if they never learn to love public speaking, they can learn to face an audience without feeling frightened.

### B. Do You Believe in Magic?

f. assure

g. crucial

h. extraordinary

i. perceive

j. revive

Have you ever wondered how magic tricks work? Magicians work hard to make their tricks look like authentic° magic. But no magician has done what Horace Goldin did to make a trick look real. Goldin performed the well-known act in which a volunteer from the crowd is placed in a box, cut in half, and then reconnected right in front of the audience. But Goldin's trick was (6)\_\_\_\_\_ because of a special added twist. After the victim was sawed in half and reconnected, the audience was (7)\_\_\_\_\_d that the volunteer was fine and could return to his seat. When the man stood up, however, the top half of his body appeared to separate and fall to the floor. Meanwhile the bottom half also fell, but then it (8)\_\_\_\_\_d, got up, and ran off the stage! The trick totally bewildered° the audience.

How did Goldin do it? The secret was the volunteer, a close friend of Goldin's. The volunteer had a twin brother who had no legs. What the audience (9)\_\_\_\_\_d as the volunteer's upper half was really the legless twin. The separate walking legs were just a short person wearing normal-sized pants. In 1921, however, the legless twin brother demanded a higher salary. When Goldin refused to pay, the twin quit the act. With a (10)\_\_\_\_\_ part of the act gone, Goldin had to stop performing the trick.



# CHAPTER 19

abandon	function
alert	idle
circumstances	overcome
devote	primary
dominate	theme

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

### 1 **abandon**

/ə'bændən/

– verb

- When it got dark out, the divers had to **abandon** their search for the body of the woman who had drowned.
- Because they ran out of money, the scientists had to **abandon** their research project.

\_\_\_ *Abandon* means

- a. to begin.                      b. to sell.                      c. to quit.

### 2 **alert**

/ə'lɜ:t/

– adjective

- If you are riding a bicycle on a busy city street, you need to be **alert** at all times.
- Many people need a cup of coffee in the morning to make them feel really **alert**.

\_\_\_ *Alert* means

- a. bad-tempered.                      b. well dressed.                      c. fully awake.

### 3 **circumstances**

/ˈsɜ:kəmstənsɪz/

– noun

- My sister and brother-in-law had a big argument about something yesterday, but I do not know the exact **circumstances**.
- Here are the main **circumstances** of the robbery: A man wearing a Santa Claus mask took some money from a toy store.

\_\_\_ *Circumstances* means

- a. facts.                      b. answers.                      c. people.

### 4 **devote**

/dɪ'vəʊt/

– verb

- The kids **devoted** the entire evening to playing video games.
- Professor Morales **devoted** her life to the study of ancient Egypt.

\_\_\_ *Devote* means

- a. to look over.                      b. to give over.                      c. to win over.

### 5 **dominate**

/ˈdɒmɪneɪt/

– verb

- McDonald's and Burger King seem to **dominate** the country's burger market.
- My brother likes to dream about a time when his favorite team will be so good that it will **dominate** football.

\_\_\_ *Dominate* means

- a. to take pity on.                      b. to be a leader in.                      c. to lose interest in.

### 6 **function**

/ˈfʌŋkʃən/

– noun

- A waiter's **function** is to take the diners' orders and then to bring them their food.
- What is the **function** of that red button on the front of the VCR?

\_\_\_ *Function* means

- a. purpose.                      b. subject.                      c. length of time.

- 7 **idle**  
/ˈaɪdl/  
– adjective
- After being at home for a week with the flu, I was sick of being **idle** and happy to get back to work.
  - When the boss is out of town, many of the workers in this store are **idle** much of the time.
- \_\_\_ *Idle* means                      a. not busy.                      b. outside.                      c. in a group.
- 8 **overcome**  
/ˌəʊvəˈkʌm/  
– verb
- My brother had to **overcome** a learning disability to become a successful student.
  - With the help of swimming lessons, I **overcame** my fear of water.
- \_\_\_ *Overcome* means                      a. to know.                      b. to write about.                      c. to beat.
- 9 **primary**  
/ˈpraɪməri/  
– adjective
- My brother's **primary** interest in life seems to be playing basketball — he practices day and night.
  - The **primary** reason for the family reunion is to celebrate Grandma's ninetieth birthday.
- \_\_\_ *Primary* means                      a. easiest.                      b. forgotten.                      c. main.
- 10 **theme**  
/θi:m/  
– noun
- The writing assignment is a five-hundred-word paper on the **theme** “a surprising event.”
  - *Romeo and Juliet* and *West Side Story* share the same **theme**: young lovers separated by the hatred of others.
- \_\_\_ *Theme* means                      a. answer.                      b. rule.                      c. idea.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Most important; major
- \_\_\_\_\_ To win in a struggle over; defeat
- \_\_\_\_\_ To stop trying to continue; discontinue; quit
- \_\_\_\_\_ To give one's time or attention completely to something or someone
- \_\_\_\_\_ The expected activity of a person or thing; purpose; role
- \_\_\_\_\_ Wide-awake and watchful; highly aware
- \_\_\_\_\_ Not doing anything; inactive
- \_\_\_\_\_ To have a leading place or position in; be at the head of
- \_\_\_\_\_ Condition or facts of a particular situation or happening
- \_\_\_\_\_ The main subject; the topic around which something is organized

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. abandon	b. alert	c. circumstances	d. devote	e. dominate
f. function	g. idle	h. overcome	i. primary	j. theme

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. An \_\_\_\_ person is wide-awake and very much aware of his or her surroundings.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. It is clear that the \_\_\_\_ reason my aunt's boyfriend likes her is her money.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When my boss is just staring out the window, she looks \_\_\_\_, but she is really trying to figure out a problem.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Dances often have a special \_\_\_\_, such as "Winter Wonderland."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Before Cara can visit her grandparents in Italy, she needs to \_\_\_\_ her fear of flying in an airplane.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. When a friend called to ask if I wanted to go to the movies, I quickly \_\_\_\_ed my ironing and got ready to go out.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The young skater \_\_\_\_s five hours each day to practicing.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. At first I thought Jorge was unfriendly, but when I learned the \_\_\_\_ of his life — he is a single parent who is also caring for his elderly father — I understood that he doesn't have much time to chat.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. A pen and a pencil have the same \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Coca Cola and Pepsi \_\_\_\_ the cola market.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. During the Depression of the 1930s, \_\_\_\_ were so bad that many young people had to \_\_\_\_ their education and go to work full-time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. The boss was angry when he found us taking a long break. "Your \_\_\_\_ is to get work done," he snapped — "not to sit around \_\_\_\_!"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. "You'll have to read carefully to find the \_\_\_\_ of this story," our instructor said. Then he assured° us, "But if you are \_\_\_\_ and pay attention to every clue, I think you can figure out the author's true topic."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. Some women's \_\_\_\_ interest is their careers, and some \_\_\_\_ themselves to their families; others manage to do both.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. There are many true stories of very successful people who have \_\_\_\_ serious physical problems and gone on to \_\_\_\_ a sport.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>devotion</b> , <i>noun</i>	Deep affection and loyalty
b. <b>dominant</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Having more influence or power than others
c. <b>idleness</b> , <i>noun</i>	The state of being inactive
d. <b>primarily</b> , <i>adverb</i>	Mainly; chiefly
e. <b>theme song</b> , <i>noun</i>	A melody which is regularly used on a TV show or movie or by an individual and which comes to stand for that show or movie or person

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. In my home, we \_\_\_\_ speak Spanish, unless we have English-speaking visitors. Then, of course, we communicate° in English.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. When I was a teenager, it was the style to sign a love letter to your girlfriend or boyfriend with this rhyme: "Yours with an ocean of \_\_\_\_."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When I'm on vacation, I like to spend some time in total \_\_\_\_\_. I sleep late and rest all day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Tim is the \_\_\_\_ partner in his marriage. He makes all the decisions, and his wife just says, "Yes, dear."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. If Tim's wife had a \_\_\_\_\_, it would have to be "Stand By Your Man."

f. <b>alertness</b> , <i>noun</i>	State or condition of being wide awake; full or intense awareness
g. <b>functional</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Working well
h. <b>idler</b> , <i>noun</i>	A lazy person
i. <b>prime</b> , <i>adjective</i>	First in importance or value
j. <b>theme park</b> , <i>noun</i>	An amusement park in which all the buildings, exhibits, and rides are built around a central subject

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Barry is a terrible \_\_\_\_: he is at the water fountain, on the phone with friends, and on coffee breaks more often than he actually works.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. When my son woke up after his operation, the nurse tested his \_\_\_\_ by asking questions such as "Where are you, Billy?" and "Do you know what day it is?"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. My old car looks terrible, but it's still \_\_\_\_\_, taking me wherever I want to go.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. I took my little niece to a \_\_\_\_ that is based on *Sesame Street*. The ideas of the rides and games are all from that show.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. TV broadcasters can charge the most for ads that appear during \_\_\_\_\_ time, when most people are watching.

➤ **Synonyms and Antonyms**

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. **circumstances**  
a. conditions  
b. jobs  
c. activities  
d. abilities
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. **dominate**  
a. lead  
b. follow  
c. be active  
d. leave
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. **devote**  
a. get rid of  
b. win over  
c. hide from  
d. give over to
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. **function**  
a. subject  
b. fact  
c. purpose  
d. rule
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. **theme**  
a. fact  
b. safety  
c. use  
d. subject

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. **abandon**  
a. leave  
b. continue  
c. lose  
d. work badly
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. **alert**  
a. sleepy  
b. curious  
c. complete  
d. late
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. **idle**  
a. new  
b. stiff  
c. active  
d. grateful
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. **overcome**  
a. win  
b. follow  
c. continue  
d. give in to
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. **primary**  
a. least expensive  
b. least important  
c. not enough  
d. not prepared

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. The Miracle Runner

a. devote  
d. primary

b. dominate  
e. overcome

c. idle

Glenn Cunningham was one of the most famous and extraordinary° athletes of the 1930s. To succeed, he had to (1)\_\_\_\_\_ difficulties that might have stopped anyone. When Glenn was 8, he and his older brother Floyd were trapped in a burning building. Floyd was killed, and Glenn was badly burned. The fire had eaten deep into his legs, and the toes of one foot were gone. In fact, doctors advised° his parents to have Glenn's legs taken off. Glenn lay in bed for months, his legs thin as sticks. He hated being (2)\_\_\_\_\_, so he struggled to learn to stand and then to take a few steps. Then he began to run. At first, his (3)\_\_\_\_\_ goal in running was just to get rid of his limp. Then he discovered that he was a very good runner.

At age 13, Glenn entered a mile race at a local fair and won easily. From then on, he (4)\_\_\_\_\_d himself to running — and to winning. In high school, then in college, and later when he was a member of the United States Olympic team, he (5)\_\_\_\_\_d his sport. He set a world-record time for running the mile: 4 minutes, 4.4 seconds. And this was someone who had been told he would never walk again!

### B. One of Those Days

f. abandon  
i. function

g. alert  
j. theme

h. circumstances

Did you ever have a day whose (6)\_\_\_\_\_ seems to be “things that go wrong”? I had one such day last Friday. This is the only day I have a class at 8 a.m. But my alarm clock did not perform its (7)\_\_\_\_\_ — it did not make a sound. I had no time to eat, but because I was sleepy, I made a cup of coffee to help me feel more (8)\_\_\_\_\_. When I poured milk into the coffee, though, I found that the milk was sour. Yuck! So I (9)\_\_\_\_\_ed my effort to have a cup of coffee, grabbed my car keys, and ran out. Then I remembered my car was in the shop for repairs. So I raced to the bus stop, but got there just as the bus drove off. Desperate° to get to school, I decided to continue on foot, so I began running again. Then along came a car that hit a deep puddle and splashed me from head to foot with mud.

At school, I told the instructor the (10)\_\_\_\_\_ that had made me late, muddy, and out of breath. Looking annoyed that I had disrupted° the class, he told me to hand in my assignment. At that point, I discovered I had brought the wrong textbook and notebook. I decided then and there that the next time I oversleep, I'll just stay in bed!

disregard  
excerpt  
exclude  
hinder  
misleading

monotonous  
obtain  
prey  
seize  
severe

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

- 1 **disregard**  
/ˌdɪsɪˈɡɑːd/  
— verb

\_\_\_ *Disregard* means

- I suggested that Patty put some of her money in a savings account, but she **disregarded** my idea and spent it all.
  - The drive with Luis was frightening — he **disregarded** the speed limit, even though the road was icy.
- a. to follow.                      b. to ignore.                      c. to get in the way of.

- 2 **excerpt**  
/ˈɛksɜːpt/  
— noun

\_\_\_ *Excerpt* means

- The *New York Times* printed all of the President's speech, but most newspapers printed only **excerpts** from it.
- Previews advertise films by showing several **excerpts**, parts that will make people want to come see the whole movie.

- a. part.                      b. price.                      c. speech.

- 3 **exclude**  
/ɪksˈkluːd/  
— verb

\_\_\_ *Exclude* means

- In making pickles that will be stored for a long time, air must be **excluded** from the jars.
- The little boy ran crying to his teacher after other children **excluded** him from their game.

- a. to watch.                      b. to invite.                      c. to keep out.

- 4 **hinder**  
/ˈhɪndə(r)/  
— verb

\_\_\_ *Hinder* means

- Not having computer skills **hindered** Jane in her search for an office job.
- Bad weather **hindered** the climbers on their hike up the mountain.

- a. to get in the way of.                      b. to cheer up.                      c. to find.

- 5 **misleading**  
/ˌmɪsˈliːdɪŋ/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ *Misleading* means

- The fact that the two close friends have the same last name is **misleading**. Many people think they are really sisters.
- My cousin may appear rich, but his fancy car and nice clothes are **misleading**. In reality, he owes thousands of dollars on his credit card.

- a. hard to find.                      b. recent.                      c. giving the wrong idea.

- 6 **monotonous**  
/məˈnɒtənəs/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ *Monotonous* means

- The child in the supermarket kept up a **monotonous** request — “I want some candy. I want some candy. I want some candy.”
- My days had become **monotonous**: I got up, went to work, came home, slept, then did it all over again.

- a. dull.                      b. pleasant.                      c. messy.

7 **obtain**  
/əb'tein/  
– verb

- After completing the Driver's Education class, Maria **obtained** a driver's license.
- The soldier **obtained** a three-day pass in order to attend his sister's wedding.

\_\_\_ *Obtain* means

- a. to grab.                      b. to get.                      c. to give away.

8 **prey**  
/prei/  
– noun

- Because a cat's **prey** includes mice, farmers like to keep cats in their barns.
- Movie stars are the **prey** of thoughtless photographers who will do anything to get a photo.

\_\_\_ *Prey* means

- a. those that are hunted.      b. part of a whole.      c. sickness.

9 **seize**  
/si:z/  
– verb

- The woman screamed when a thief **seized** her pocketbook.
- Before anyone could stop him, the baby **seized** the cat's tail and pulled.

\_\_\_ *Seize* means

- a. to laugh at.                      b. to grab.                      c. to know.

10 **severe**  
/si'viə(r)/  
– adjective

- A **severe** storm hit our area, causing great damage and several deaths.
- Patients with the most **severe** illnesses are kept in a separate part of the hospital, where they receive special care.

\_\_\_ *Severe* means

- a. fair.                      b. dangerous.                      c. boring.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

- \_\_\_\_\_ A creature or creatures that are hunted by another animal; the victim or victims of an attack
- \_\_\_\_\_ Part of a whole work (such as a book, speech, or film)
- \_\_\_\_\_ To pay no attention to
- \_\_\_\_\_ To refuse to allow in; not include
- \_\_\_\_\_ To get something through planning or effort
- \_\_\_\_\_ Leading to a mistake in thought or action
- \_\_\_\_\_ Boring because of lack of change or differences
- \_\_\_\_\_ Causing great physical or mental suffering; very serious
- \_\_\_\_\_ To take hold of suddenly or with force
- \_\_\_\_\_ To stop or slow down (someone or something); block; interfere with

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.



➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. disregard	b. excerpt	c. exclude	d. hinder	e. misleading
f. monotonous	g. obtain	h. prey	i. seize	j. severe

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Cynthia's bright smile is \_\_\_\_; actually, she is feeling quite angry.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The robbers' usual \_\_\_\_ were newlyweds whose houses might contain expensive wedding gifts.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. My aunt is a vegetarian and \_\_\_\_s all meat from her house.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A huge snowstorm \_\_\_\_ed Thanksgiving travelers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Although the car wasn't damaged much in the crash, the driver had \_\_\_\_ injuries.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. No matter how much you like your favorite food, having it at every meal would soon become \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Members of the Environmental Club went door-to-door to \_\_\_\_ signatures for their request to set up a recycling center in town.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The video called *The Best of Johnny Carson* contains funny \_\_\_\_s from ten years of the *Tonight* show.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. When she realized her train would leave in just an hour, Rita \_\_\_\_d her suitcase from the shelf and began stuffing clothes into it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Phil lost his money when he \_\_\_\_ed the "Out of Order" sign and put two quarters in the jukebox.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. It is striking to see a hawk drop out of the sky and \_\_\_\_ a field mouse, then fly away with its \_\_\_\_ in its claws.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. When my uncle had a \_\_\_\_ illness, the doctor \_\_\_\_ed everyone from his hospital room except my aunt.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. The TV ads for the movie used an \_\_\_\_ from the film that was \_\_\_\_\_. It was funny, but the movie was not a comedy at all.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. Yolanda wanted to be first in line to \_\_\_\_ tickets for a very special concert, but the snowstorm \_\_\_\_ed her.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. Because Wendy is so shy, she \_\_\_\_s invitations to go out, and as a result she stays home night after night and leads a very \_\_\_\_ life.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>exclusive</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Letting only certain people in
b. <b>hindrance</b> , <i>noun</i>	Something that gets in the way or holds back
c. <b>include</b> , <i>verb</i>	To take in (someone or something) as part of something larger
d. <b>monotony</b> , <i>noun</i>	Boredom
e. <b>severity</b> , <i>noun</i>	Seriousness

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The icy sidewalk was such a \_\_\_\_ that I missed my bus.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. When we heard our friend had been in an accident, we called the hospital to try to learn the \_\_\_\_ of her injuries.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. I don't enjoy going to the zoo because I am bothered by the \_\_\_\_ of the animals' lives — they spend day after day idle° in the same small cages.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The Honor Club at our school is so \_\_\_\_ that only 5 percent of the student body is qualified to join.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The Honor Club \_\_\_\_s top students from the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth grades.

f. <b>exclusion</b> , <i>noun</i>	The act of leaving something out
g. <b>mislead</b> , <i>verb</i>	To lead (someone) to think what is not so
h. <b>monotone</b> , <i>noun</i>	A single, unchanging sound
i. <b>predator</b> , <i>noun</i>	An animal that lives by hunting other animals for food
j. <b>regardless of</b> , <i>preposition</i>	Without considering anyone or anything else; in spite of

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Professor Woodworth speaks in such a dull \_\_\_\_ that students have a hard time staying alert° in his class.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. It's easy to see that the tiger is a \_\_\_\_\_. Its sharp teeth are designed for ripping other animals to pieces.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Some advertisements purposely \_\_\_\_ people, making them believe the products are better than they really are. Companies should not be allowed to deceive° people that way.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Becoming a vegetarian means more than the \_\_\_\_ of meat from the diet. It also means creating a balanced diet that doesn't involve meat.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. I don't enjoy working with Vic because he does what he likes \_\_\_\_ anyone else's opinions.

## ➤ Analogies

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. MONOTONOUS : EXCITING ::

- a. healthy : strong
- c. five : fifteen

- b. film : camera
- d. hinder : help

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. PREY : VICTIM ::

- a. artist : painting
- c. security° : lock

- b. baby : infant
- d. doctor : patient

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. SEVERE : MILD ::

- a. painful : pleasant
- c. harmful : dangerous

- b. angry : frowning
- d. loud : noisy

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. COMMUNICATE° : TELEPHONE ::

- a. fiction° : book
- c. sweep : broom

- b. distract° : attention
- d. screwdriver : nail

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. EXTRAORDINARY° : COMMON ::

- a. assure° : promise
- c. mask : face

- b. chew : gum
- d. hostile° : friendly

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. DISREGARD : IGNORE ::

- a. recall : remember
- c. protect : reveal

- b. important : silly
- d. sing : choir

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. ECONOMICAL° : EXTRAVAGANT° ::

- a. country : map
- c. pitch : ball

- b. earnest° : sincere
- d. calm : worried

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. PRETTY : UGLY ::

- a. friendly : nice
- c. important : crucial°

- b. timid° : brave
- d. difficult : burden°

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. SEIZE : TAKE ::

- a. exclude : include
- c. pull : push

- b. embarrass : humiliate°
- d. shout : whisper

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. PERCEIVE° : SENSES ::

- a. lazy : idle°
- c. write : letter

- b. song : music
- d. run : legs

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Pregnancy and Alcohol

a. excerpt  
d. misleading

b. exclude  
e. severe

c. hinder

If all goes well, an unborn baby thrives<sup>o</sup>, growing from a few cells into a healthy child. However, not all pregnancies go well. Sometimes, problems arise that (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the baby's development. Most of those problems just happen and are not within anyone's control. But one common cause of a baby's problems can be prevented: the mother's use of alcohol.

Here is an (2) \_\_\_\_\_ from a textbook discussion of alcohol and pregnancy: "A woman who drinks heavily during pregnancy can injure the brain of her unborn child." A child born to a heavy drinker is likely to have (3) \_\_\_\_\_ health problems, including a small head, unusual facial features, low intelligence, and a damaged heart.

But it would be (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to say that only heavy drinking is a problem during pregnancy. Even if a mother-to-be has just two drinks a week, she can harm her child's ability to pay attention and learn easily.

Exactly how much alcohol is too much for a pregnant woman? No one knows for sure. Until we know more, a pregnant woman is wise to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ alcohol from her life.

### B. A Criminal with a Tail

f. disregard  
i. prey

g. monotonous  
j. seize

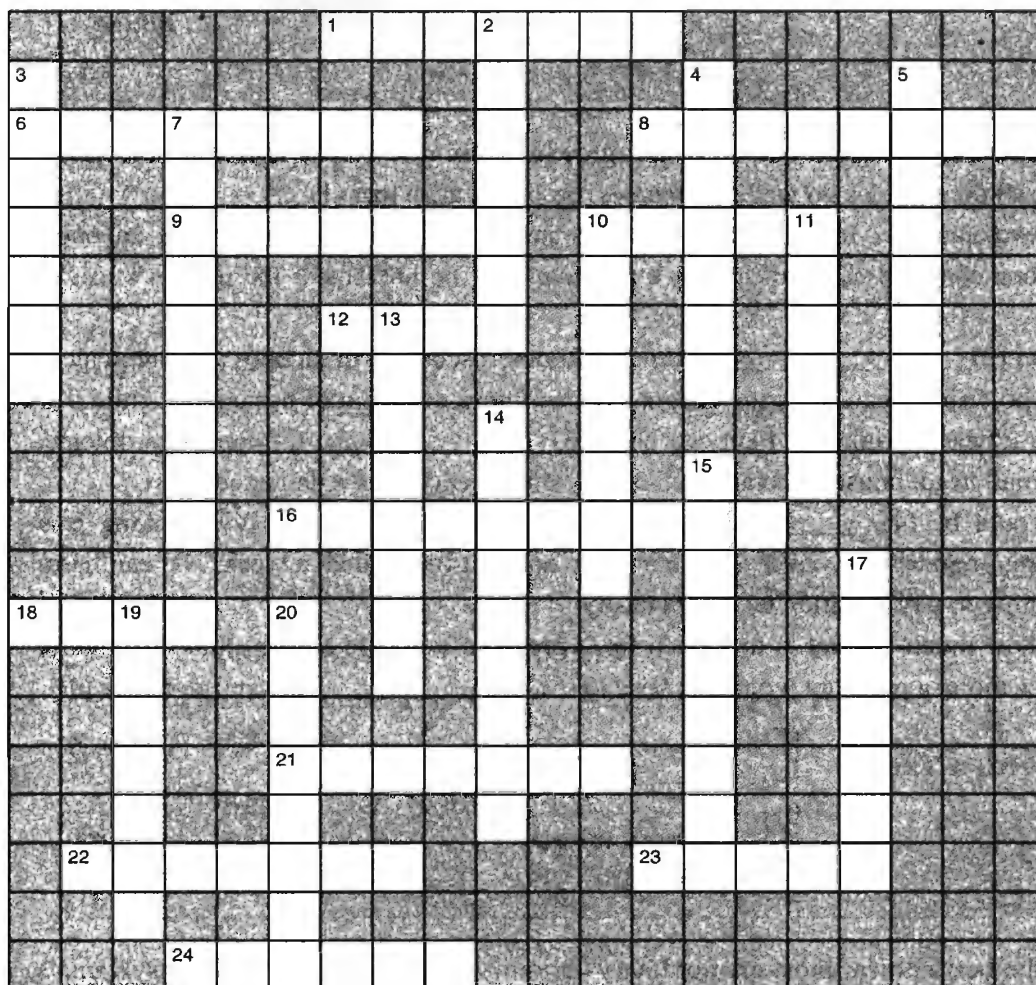
h. obtain

One of the best-known, most extraordinary<sup>o</sup> criminals ever sentenced to Pennsylvania's Graterford Prison was not a thief, a murderer, or a cheat. In fact, he was not even human. Prisoner #C2559, also known as Pep, was a dog who was (6) \_\_\_\_\_d by police in 1924 and forced to spend the rest of his days behind bars. Pep got into trouble by attacking his neighbor's cat one hot summer afternoon. Unfortunately for Pep, his furry (7) \_\_\_\_\_ happened to belong to Gifford Pinchot, the governor of Pennsylvania. The angry governor (8) \_\_\_\_\_ed the fact that Pep was a dog and ordered an immediate trial. Without the ability to speak or (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a lawyer for himself, Pep was sent to jail for life.

In prison, however, Pep was treated more kindly. His fellow prisoners were very fond of him. Even though he was assigned to a cell and expected to work every day, Pep was allowed to transfer<sup>o</sup> from one cell to another whenever he wanted. His furry face and wagging tail were a welcome change in the otherwise (10) \_\_\_\_\_ world of the prison, where each day seemed like the one before it. When he died six years later, Pep was the most popular inmate in the entire prison.

## UNIT FOUR: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit Four. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



abandon  
alert  
apparent  
automatic  
bewilder  
crucial  
deceive  
distract  
dominate  
emotion  
exclude  
fulfill  
function  
hinder  
hostile  
humiliate  
idle  
impulse  
influence  
legible  
monotonous  
prey  
security  
seize  
theory

### ACROSS

1. Clear enough to be read
6. To confuse; puzzle
8. Protection; freedom from danger, fear, or worry
9. To carry out; achieve; do
10. Wide-awake and watchful
12. Not doing anything; inactive
16. Boring because of lack of change or differences
18. A creature or creatures that are hunted by another animal
21. Extremely important

22. Unfriendly; having or showing ill will
23. To take hold of suddenly or with force
24. To stop or slow down; block

### DOWN

2. A sudden urge to do something
3. To discontinue; quit
4. To make (someone) believe something that is not true
5. To cause to turn away from what one was paying attention to

7. To have an effect on
10. Obvious; easy to see
11. A statement that explains events or facts
13. To have a leading place or position in; be at the head of
14. Moving or operating by itself
15. To make ashamed; embarrass
17. To refuse to allow in; not include
19. A strong feeling
20. The expected activity of a person or thing; purpose

## UNIT FOUR: Test 1

### PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. When the children began screaming and throwing things on the bus, the driver yelled, "This is not \_\_\_\_ behavior!"  
a. primary      b. legible      c. alert      d. appropriate
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. English police are still \_\_\_\_ by the 1934 murder of a woman whose body parts were found in two wooden trunks. Not only is the crime unsolved; the name of the victim is still unknown.  
a. bewildered      b. obtained      c. communicated      d. revived
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Letters are still my favorite way to \_\_\_\_ with faraway friends and family.  
a. fulfill      b. seize      c. communicate      d. humiliate
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Mel kept his wife from knowing he had lost his job. He \_\_\_\_ her by leaving the house each morning as if he were going to work.  
a. alerted      b. fulfilled      c. devoted      d. deceived
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. To show how \_\_\_\_ he was about wanting the job, Ira offered to work for no pay for a week.  
a. timid      b. primary      c. hostile      d. earnest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. A raised voice can mean one of several \_\_\_\_: anger, excitement, happiness, or surprise.  
a. emotions      b. preys      c. burdens      d. fictions
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. It is hard for a right-handed person to write a \_\_\_\_ message using his or her left hand.  
a. severe      b. timid      c. legible      d. primary
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Unsatisfied with the way the local police were handling the murder case, the victim's family hired a detective to \_\_\_\_ it.  
a. revive      b. influence      c. investigate      d. exclude
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. When my daughter said, "There is a monster under my bed," her story was not purely \_\_\_\_: there was a large spider hiding there.  
a. fiction      b. burden      c. function      d. excerpt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. I realized my \_\_\_\_ that all dog lovers were nice people was wrong when I met Doreen. She is very nice to dogs, but nasty to human beings.  
a. prey      b. theme      c. function      d. theory
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. To increase her feeling of \_\_\_\_ when she walks home from the bus stop at night, Elena learned karate.  
a. security      b. circumstances      c. burden      d. impulse

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. It's \_\_\_\_ that your shoes are muddy — you're leaving dirty footprints on the carpet.  
a. extravagant    b. hostile    c. apparent    d. timid
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. Although many of our neighbors have gardens, Mr. Soo's is really \_\_\_\_\_. He grows thirty-pound watermelons, tomatoes as big as softballs, and flowers as beautiful as anything in a flower shop.  
a. hostile    b. extraordinary    c. misleading    d. monotonous

**PART B**

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. Because my sister skipped assignments and classes, it's hard for me to *sympathize* with her disappointment over failing algebra.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 15. My boss *fulfilled* my request for a day off, saying, "No, you've had too much time off already."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 16. Someday I'd like to replace my old-fashioned camera with a new *automatic* one that does everything by itself, even advancing the film.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 17. Fay is so *extravagant* that she purposely finds fault with waiters so that she can refuse to leave them a tip.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 18. Some parents worry that "Barbie dolls," with their impossibly long legs and tiny waists, can *influence* little girls, making them feel bad about their own bodies.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 19. Dan is worried about his math test because he knows it is *crucial* to his grade for the course.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 20. It is more *economical* to buy a six-pack of sodas for \$1.99 than to buy six single sodas at 50 cents each.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 21. Since he was a little boy, Jon has *devoted* himself to becoming a pilot. He reads constantly about airplanes and flying and saves all his money for flying lessons.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 22. I feel so tired that instead of getting up this morning, I would love to just *transfer* in bed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 23. Having our grandfather live with us was not a *burden*. Not only was he easy to live with, but he was very helpful around the house.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 24. I was so excited when my parents *humiliated* me with a plane ticket to visit my sister in England.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 25. As Dan studied for his test, his family helped *distract* him by turning off the TV and keeping the house quiet and peaceful.

<b>Score</b> (Number correct) _____ × 4 = _____ %
---

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## UNIT FOUR: Test 2

### PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. abandon	b. circumstances	c. disregard	d. function	e. hinder
f. hostile	g. misleading	h. monotonous	i. perceive	j. prey
k. revive	l. seize	m. severe		

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. It is the \_\_\_\_ of advertising to persuade you that you will be happier and better off if only you will buy a certain product.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Very young cats who have kittens will often \_\_\_\_ the babies instead of taking care of them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When children get chicken pox, the disease is just a minor problem, but for adults, chicken pox can be a \_\_\_\_ illness.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Paula's parents live in unusual \_\_\_\_; although they have been divorced for years, they continue to live in separate parts of the same house.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. It is \_\_\_\_ that we have a Morrisville address, since we actually live much closer to the town of Hendrix.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. I prefer a job that takes a lot of effort to one that is easy but \_\_\_\_, with little or no change from hour to hour and day to day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Foolishly, Randy \_\_\_\_ed the fact that he is allergic to seafood, ate a lobster, and ended up in the hospital.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Before I could take a bite of my grilled cheese sandwich, a hungry dog \_\_\_\_d it, pulling it out of my hand and gulping it down.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Luis does not let his lack of a car \_\_\_\_ him from getting to work; he rides his bicycle.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Early in the season, the baseball team's chance of getting to the World Series was not good. But then the team \_\_\_\_d its hopes by winning eight games in a row.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Long before I entered the house, I could \_\_\_\_ that Mom was making her famous spaghetti sauce. Its wonderful smell was the clue.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. To catch its \_\_\_\_, the anteater sticks its tongue into an anthill.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. Never run up to pet a dog you don't know. Move toward it slowly until you are sure it is not \_\_\_\_.

(Continues on next page)



## PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_\_ 14. I will let my cousin move into my apartment only if he *assures* me it will be for no more than a week.
- \_\_\_\_ 15. Mr. Henderson does everything according to *impulse*. For example, when he decided to buy a car, he spent months comparing models and prices, reading articles in car magazines, and visiting car dealers.
- \_\_\_\_ 16. Anitra is the most *idle* one in her family — she does all of the cooking and cleaning by herself.
- \_\_\_\_ 17. Every group of friends seems to have one especially *timid* member who bosses the others around.
- \_\_\_\_ 18. In 1959, one film — *Ben Hur* — *dominated* the Academy Awards, winning 11 Oscars.
- \_\_\_\_ 19. The videotapes of the robbery showed that as it was going on, the night watchman was *alert* and snoring in his office.
- \_\_\_\_ 20. Although Marla was abused as a child, she has *overcome* that terrible experience and is a kind, loving parent herself.
- \_\_\_\_ 21. The sweater has bits of blue and green in it, but its *primary* color is red.
- \_\_\_\_ 22. Have you ever really had to write a paper on the *theme* “How I Spent My Summer Vacation”?
- \_\_\_\_ 23. Robert Frost’s “Mending Wall” is a well-known poem whose *excerpt* warns us not to shut ourselves off from other people.
- \_\_\_\_ 24. “No bacon for me, thank you,” said Ahmed. “We Muslims *exclude* pork from our diet.”
- \_\_\_\_ 25. Scientists are working on a vaccine that will help people *obtain* the virus that causes AIDS.

<i>Score</i> (Number correct) _____ × 4 = _____ %
---

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## UNIT FOUR: Test 3

### PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

- |                             |                        |                   |                          |                      |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| ___ 1. <b>assure</b>        | a) argue with          | b) promise        | c) run from              | d) reach out to      |
| ___ 2. <b>automatic</b>     | a) operating by itself | b) money-saving   | c) clear                 | d) ashamed           |
| ___ 3. <b>bewilder</b>      | a) discontinue         | b) hide           | c) confuse               | d) examine           |
| ___ 4. <b>circumstances</b> | a) feelings            | b) situation      | c) hardships             | d) enemies           |
| ___ 5. <b>communicate</b>   | a) take seriously      | b) make strong    | c) pay for               | d) make known        |
| ___ 6. <b>devote</b>        | a) slow down           | b) turn away      | c) get rid of            | d) give oneself      |
| ___ 7. <b>distract</b>      | a) pull attention away | b) point toward   | c) get                   | d) make better       |
| ___ 8. <b>emotion</b>       | a) movement            | b) victim         | c) hardship              | d) feeling           |
| ___ 9. <b>excerpt</b>       | a) sudden decision     | b) effect         | c) part of a work        | d) whole             |
| ___ 10. <b>fulfill</b>      | a) hurry               | b) embarrass      | c) search for            | d) carry out         |
| ___ 11. <b>function</b>     | a) knowledge           | b) hardship       | c) topic                 | d) use               |
| ___ 12. <b>humiliate</b>    | a) shame               | b) give energy to | c) send                  | d) calm              |
| ___ 13. <b>impulse</b>      | a) position            | b) sudden desire  | c) heartbeat             | d) difficulty        |
| ___ 14. <b>influence</b>    | a) say                 | b) activity       | c) get                   | d) have an effect on |
| ___ 15. <b>investigate</b>  | a) examine             | b) ignore         | c) punish                | d) lose              |
| ___ 16. <b>misleading</b>   | a) proper              | b) aware          | c) giving the wrong idea | d) unfriendly        |
| ___ 17. <b>obtain</b>       | a) protect             | b) explore        | c) move                  | d) get               |
| ___ 18. <b>perceive</b>     | a) notice              | b) grab           | c) ignore                | d) lie to            |
| ___ 19. <b>prey</b>         | a) hardship            | b) subject        | c) victim                | d) struggle          |
| ___ 20. <b>primary</b>      | a) small               | b) main           | c) moving by itself      | d) aware             |
| ___ 21. <b>seize</b>        | a) grab                | b) tell           | c) puzzle                | d) convince          |
| ___ 22. <b>sympathize</b>   | a) ignore              | b) slow down      | c) leave out             | d) feel pity         |
| ___ 23. <b>theme</b>        | a) difficulty          | b) condition      | c) main topic            | d) hardship          |
| ___ 24. <b>theory</b>       | a) explanation         | b) effect         | c) activity              | d) choice            |
| ___ 25. <b>transfer</b>     | a) puzzle              | b) study closely  | c) win                   | d) move              |

(Continues on next page)

**PART B: Antonyms**

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- \_\_\_ 26. **abandon**      a) make clear      b) surprise      c) lose      d) continue
- \_\_\_ 27. **alert**      a) patient      b) sleepy      c) serious      d) special
- \_\_\_ 28. **apparent**      a) not proper      b) hidden      c) difficult      d) unfriendly
- \_\_\_ 29. **appropriate**      a) least important      b) friendly      c) exact      d) not proper
- \_\_\_ 30. **burden**      a) truth      b) something easy to handle      c) something usual  
d) thought
- \_\_\_ 31. **crucial**      a) not real      b) not important      c) not clear      d) not wanted
- \_\_\_ 32. **deceive**      a) tire      b) give away      c) tell the truth to      d) let go of
- \_\_\_ 33. **disregard**      a) know      b) throw away      c) make fun of      d) pay attention to
- \_\_\_ 34. **dominate**      a) accept as true      b) lie to      c) argue with  
d) have a low position
- \_\_\_ 35. **earnest**      a) weak      b) dishonest      c) not fearful      d) not important
- \_\_\_ 36. **economical**      a) exciting      b) expected      c) expert      d) expensive
- \_\_\_ 37. **exclude**      a) set free      b) support      c) lose to      d) include
- \_\_\_ 38. **extraordinary**      a) friendly      b) careless      c) usual      d) important
- \_\_\_ 39. **extravagant**      a) troubled      b) money-saving      c) confident      d) not serious
- \_\_\_ 40. **fiction**      a) action      b) idea      c) subject      d) truth
- \_\_\_ 41. **hinder**      a) give away      b) help      c) change      d) lose
- \_\_\_ 42. **hostile**      a) not sincere      b) brave      c) not boring      d) friendly
- \_\_\_ 43. **idle**      a) busy      b) valuable      c) not proper      d) brave
- \_\_\_ 44. **legible**      a) not boring      b) unreadable      c) untruthful      d) not easy
- \_\_\_ 45. **monotonous**      a) unusual      b) interesting      c) true      d) easy to understand
- \_\_\_ 46. **overcome**      a) continue      b) lose to      c) have faith in      d) find fault with
- \_\_\_ 47. **revive**      a) make clear      b) pay attention      c) listen carefully  
d) make weak
- \_\_\_ 48. **security**      a) relief      b) activity      c) anger      d) danger
- \_\_\_ 49. **severe**      a) sad      b) fast      c) new      d) mild
- \_\_\_ 50. **timid**      a) unclear      b) brave      c) important      d) fast

<i>Score</i> (Number correct) _____ × 2 = _____ %
---

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

# Unit Five

## Chapter 21

conflict	stress
possess	sufficient
procedure	unanimous
renew	vary
resources	vicinity

## Chapter 22

abolish	nevertheless
corrupt	precise
decay	reform
expand	tendency
flexible	vast

## Chapter 23

assert	precaution
clarify	preconception
evade	resemble
extend	rigid
negligent	vertical

## Chapter 24

anxious	illustrate
comprehend	impression
convince	inferior
dramatic	overwhelm
frank	thorough

## Chapter 25

acquire	precede
commitment	resent
formal	solemn
fragment	spite
fundamental	symbolize

## Unit Five: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| ___ 1. <b>conflict</b>      | a) period of time   b) point of view   c) lesson   d) disagreement                   |
| ___ 2. <b>possess</b>       | a) run after   b) adjust   c) leave unchanged   d) own                               |
| ___ 3. <b>procedure</b>     | a) method   b) opinion   c) public   d) piece of property                            |
| ___ 4. <b>renew</b>         | a) create   b) make active again   c) force one's will upon   d) attempt             |
| ___ 5. <b>resources</b>     | a) supplies   b) inventions   c) responses   d) agreements                           |
| ___ 6. <b>stress</b>        | a) tension   b) relaxation   c) enjoyment   d) excitement                            |
| ___ 7. <b>sufficient</b>    | a) less than is needed   b) humorous   c) empty   d) enough                          |
| ___ 8. <b>unanimous</b>     | a) poorly thought out   b) one-sided   c) based on complete agreement<br>d) mistaken |
| ___ 9. <b>vary</b>          | a) change   b) insist   c) remain the same   d) reduce in size                       |
| ___ 10. <b>vicinity</b>     | a) heated argument   b) area around a place   c) written pamphlet<br>d) type of lamp |
| ___ 11. <b>abolish</b>      | a) make smooth   b) argue   c) get rid of   d) pay for                               |
| ___ 12. <b>corrupt</b>      | a) sudden   b) not honest   c) careful   d) not friendly                             |
| ___ 13. <b>decay</b>        | a) break down   b) make a decision   c) rebuild   d) make clear                      |
| ___ 14. <b>expand</b>       | a) spend   b) shrink   c) punish   d) grow   |
| ___ 15. <b>flexible</b>     | a) able to speak   b) able to slow down   c) able to bend   d) able to walk          |
| ___ 16. <b>nevertheless</b> | a) because   b) afterward   c) always   d) even so                                   |
| ___ 17. <b>precise</b>      | a) exact   b) busy   c) large   d) neglectful  |
| ___ 18. <b>reform</b>       | a) annoy   b) make clear   c) make better   d) confuse                               |
| ___ 19. <b>tendency</b>     | a) group of ten   b) leaning toward   c) working hard   d) setting a limit           |
| ___ 20. <b>vast</b>         | a) well known   b) silly   c) very large   d) frightening                            |
| ___ 21. <b>assert</b>       | a) state as true   b) tell a lie   c) put limits on   d) get ready for               |
| ___ 22. <b>clarify</b>      | a) doubt   b) explain   c) create   d) stop  |
| ___ 23. <b>evade</b>        | a) make small   b) break down   c) get away from   d) make longer                    |
| ___ 24. <b>extend</b>       | a) make longer   b) make up   c) make ready   d) make small                          |
| ___ 25. <b>negligent</b>    | a) watchful   b) tired   c) not bending   d) careless                                |

*(Continues on next page)*

- \_\_\_ 26. **precaution**      a) cure    b) problem    c) something done to fix a problem  
d) something done beforehand
- \_\_\_ 27. **preconception**    a) judgment made in advance    b) decision    c) problem    d) area nearby
- \_\_\_ 28. **resemble**          a) see again    b) look like    c) worry about    d) be angry with
- \_\_\_ 29. **rigid**              a) like new    b) not bending    c) not friendly    d) hard to see
- \_\_\_ 30. **vertical**          a) side to side    b) up and down    c) all around    d) truthful
- \_\_\_ 31. **anxious**          a) sleepy    b) sick    c) busy    d) worried
- \_\_\_ 32. **comprehend**      a) scorn    b) repeat    c) protect    d) understand
- \_\_\_ 33. **convince**          a) cause to believe    b) refuse to accept    c) disregard    d) clean up
- \_\_\_ 34. **dramatic**          a) impressive    b) hard to notice    c) odd    d) boring
- \_\_\_ 35. **frank**              a) untruthful    b) youthful    c) honest    d) painful
- \_\_\_ 36. **illustrate**        a) give an example    b) destroy    c) repair    d) send off
- \_\_\_ 37. **impression**      a) lie    b) pattern    c) opinion    d) center (of something)
- \_\_\_ 38. **inferior**          a) highly valued    b) poor in quality    c) less expensive  
d) unbreakable
- \_\_\_ 39. **overwhelm**        a) dissolve    b) understand    c) make helpless    d) make whole
- \_\_\_ 40. **thorough**         a) carefully done    b) wasted    c) forgotten    d) well-paying
- \_\_\_ 41. **acquire**           a) appreciate    b) go before    c) need    d) get
- \_\_\_ 42. **commitment**      a) promise    b) symbol    c) talk    d) group of people
- \_\_\_ 43. **formal**            a) proper    b) previous    c) later    d) complete
- \_\_\_ 44. **fragment**         a) injury    b) copy    c) true statement    d) small part
- \_\_\_ 45. **fundamental**     a) basic    b) broken    c) enjoyable    d) thoughtful
- \_\_\_ 46. **precede**          a) come after    b) interrupt    c) be a part of    d) go before
- \_\_\_ 47. **resent**            a) stand for    b) feel angry at    c) give away    d) make up with
- \_\_\_ 48. **solemn**           a) lazy    b) basic    c) serious    d) quiet
- \_\_\_ 49. **spite**             a) desire to hurt    b) desire to please    c) long speech    d) sense of humor
- \_\_\_ 50. **symbolize**       a) look at    b) point to    c) talk to    d) stand for

**SCORE:** (Number correct) \_\_\_\_\_  $\times 2 =$  \_\_\_\_\_ %

**conflict**  
**possess**  
**procedure**  
**renew**  
**resources**

**stress**  
**sufficient**  
**unanimous**  
**vary**  
**vicinity**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **conflict**  
/'kɒnflɪkt/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Conflict* means

- When the **conflict** between the two diners became noisy, the restaurant manager asked them to settle their quarrel outside.
  - Marsha's children often have a **conflict** about whose turn it is to put out the trash.
- a. fight.                                      b. joke.                                      c. duty.

2 **possess**  
/pə'zes/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Possess* means

- I can't understand the desire to **possess** very expensive cars and jewelry. If I had more money, I'd spend it on travel.
  - People who spend time with young children need to **possess** plenty of patience.
- a. to have.                                      b. to know.                                      c. to see.

3 **procedure**  
/prə'si:dʒə(r)/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Procedure* means

- What **procedure** should I follow to become a citizen?
  - Even kindergarten students can learn the **procedure** for reporting an emergency: Dial 110, give your name and address, and describe the problem.
- a. answer.                                      b. steps.                                      c. support.

4 **renew**  
/rɪ'nju:/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Renew* means

- After helping to pay for their children's education, many parents barely have time to **renew** their savings in time for retirement.
  - We need a good rain to **renew** the supply of water throughout this area. In the meantime, people are being asked not to water their lawns.
- a. to change.                                      b. to upset.                                      c. to build up again.

5 **resources**  
/rɪ'sɔ:sɪz/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Resources* means

- West Virginia's natural **resources** include coal and timber.
  - A country's **resources** include its workers — the people who help to keep the economy strong.
- a. plans.                                      b. expenses.                                      c. wealth.

6 **stress**  
/stres/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Stress* means

- My doctor said my headaches were caused by **stress**. He suggested that I think of ways to reduce the tension in my life.
  - Troy and Angie are experiencing a lot of **stress**. Angie's mother is very sick, Troy just lost his job, and they just learned that Angie is going to have twins.
- a. relief.                                      b. problems.                                      c. details.

**7 sufficient**

/sə'fɪʃənt/

– *adjective*

\_\_\_\_ *Sufficient* means

- The farmers were thankful that there was **sufficient** rain to save their crops.
- Brian’s father told him, “When you bring the car home, make sure it has **sufficient** gas to get me to work tomorrow.”

a. less.

b. different.

c. enough.

**8 unanimous**

/ju:'næniməs/

– *adjective*

*Unanimous* means

- The vote electing me president of the PTA was **unanimous**. In fact, there was no other candidate to vote for.
- The jury's decision was **unanimous**. Every juror believed that the woman on trial had robbed the beauty parlor after getting her hair cut.

a. showing full agreement.

b. uncertain.

c. hard to understand.

9 vary

*/ˈveəri/*

– *verb*

         *Vary* means

- There are often great changes in weather along the coast. In one day, the temperature can **vary** by as much as forty degrees.
- Joan's lunches never **vary**. Every day, she eats a peanut butter and celery sandwich, pretzels, and a banana.

a. to begin.

b. to change.

c. to disappear.

10 vicinity

/vi'sinəti/

— *noun*

\_\_\_\_ *Vicinity* means

- In the **vicinity** of the elementary school, the speed limit is fifteen miles an hour.
- The Johnsons decided not to buy the house they liked when they learned that there was a nuclear power plant in the **vicinity**.

a. yard.

b. building.

c. neighborhood.

### Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Whatever makes up the present and future wealth of a country, state, etc., including natural supplies and labor force
2. \_\_\_\_\_ To fill up again; replace
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The area near or around a place
4. \_\_\_\_\_ A quarrel or fight; disagreement
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Showing full agreement
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Mental or emotional tension; strain
7. \_\_\_\_\_ To become different or to be different; change
8. \_\_\_\_\_ As much as is needed
9. \_\_\_\_\_ To own; have
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Method; the way in which something is done

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.



➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. conflict	b. possess	c. procedure	d. renew	e. resources
f. stress	g. sufficient	h. unanimous	i. vary	j. vicinity

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A country's \_\_\_\_\_ include all of its minerals, such as coal, gold, and silver.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. If there is no disagreement among jurors, we say that their decision is \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Whether two people or groups are fighting with words or weapons, we can say they are having a \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. If someone lives in the \_\_\_\_\_ of your home, you would call that person a neighbor.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. If you are always patient, we can say that you \_\_\_\_\_ lots of patience.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Roses \_\_\_\_\_ greatly in color, size, and shape.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a process that often involves a series of steps.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. If you say you have \_\_\_\_\_ time for an assignment, that means you have enough time to do it in.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. To \_\_\_\_\_ my supply of clean towels, I'll have to do my laundry tonight.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Anything that puts pressure on our emotions, bodies, or minds can be called \_\_\_\_\_.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. The ongoing \_\_\_\_\_ between the Millers and Smiths — an argument over the Smiths' noisy parties — has caused the Millers so much \_\_\_\_\_ that they are thinking of moving.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. My father feels lucky that there is a surgeon in our \_\_\_\_\_ who has developed a special \_\_\_\_\_ for doing the type of operation that he needs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. For certain trials, a majority vote among the jurors is not \_\_\_\_\_. Instead, the vote must be \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. According to one fairy tale, a king \_\_\_\_\_ a magic box full of gold coins; whenever the box becomes empty, it \_\_\_\_\_ its supply of coins.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. The natural \_\_\_\_\_ of the United States \_\_\_\_\_ depending upon the part of the country. For example, the Midwest is rich in farmland, and the Northeast has more coal.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>distress</b> , <i>noun</i>	Mental or physical suffering
b. <b>insufficient</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not enough
c. <b>possession</b> , <i>noun</i>	Something that is owned
d. <b>stressful</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Producing tension
e. <b>variation</b> , <i>noun</i>	A change from what is usual

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Even though a wedding is a happy event, it is also a \_\_\_\_ one for the people getting married and their families. For instance, it is common for families to argue about who gets invited and who does not.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. One of the museum's most valuable \_\_\_\_s is a five-thousand-year-old Chinese vase. Such vases are quite scarce°; there may be fewer than a dozen in the entire world.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The trip to the shore was canceled when an \_\_\_\_ number of people signed up to go.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. For dinner, we had a \_\_\_\_ on the usual pork chops — it was Spicy Hawaiian Pork with Pineapple.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. When the movers dropped a box marked "Fragile," a look of \_\_\_\_ crossed Mrs. Henderson's face. She knew the accident had not been intentional°, but inside the box was a valuable statue which she had obtained° on a trip to Mexico.

f. <b>proceed</b> , <i>verb</i>	To go ahead
g. <b>renewable</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Always able to be supplied again
h. <b>suffice</b> , <i>verb</i>	To be enough
i. <b>unvarying</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Unchanging
j. <b>variety</b> , <i>noun</i>	A number of different things; mixture

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Will five dollars \_\_\_\_ to pay for the taxi?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Turn left at Maple Avenue and \_\_\_\_ three blocks south.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Solar energy is \_\_\_\_; that is, we can always get more of it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The local college offers a \_\_\_\_ of adult classes, including yoga, oil painting, self-defense, and Chinese cooking.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. On the long car trip, the family drove past many miles of corn fields, and the children grew tired of the \_\_\_\_ view. That's when I pulled out the games I had brought along to help the children overcome° boredom.

## ➤ Word Parts

A. The suffix *-ful* mean “producing \_\_\_\_” or “full of \_\_\_\_.”

**Examples:** *stress* — tension

*joy* — great happiness

*stressful* — producing tension

*joyful* — full of great happiness

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. beautiful

b. playful

c. stressful

d. thankful

e. wasteful

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. “All you can eat” restaurants encourage people to be *producing waste*, piling far more food on their plates than they really want or need.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Although the outside of an oyster shell is rather ugly, the inside is *full of beauty*, with its pale milky rainbow of colors.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When my car broke down on a dark road far from my home, I was *full of thanks* that a police officer quickly arrived and offered me a ride to town.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Most people find it *producing stress* to have to speak in front of a large group.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Our boss may seem overly serious, but when she’s not busy, she can be quite *full of play*, laughing and telling jokes.

B. The prefix *com-* or *con-* means “with” or “together.”

**Examples:** *conflict* — a quarrel with someone

*communicate*° — to exchange information together

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. communicate°

g. complicate°

h. conflict

i. confront°

j. contrast°

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Thelma had a \_\_\_\_ with her neighbors over their dogs’ getting into her garbage cans.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The more people you invite, the more you will \_\_\_\_ our job of preparing for the party.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. There’s a big \_\_\_\_ between the two Williams brothers. One is very outgoing and friendly, and the other is quite shy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. When the Carveys didn’t pay their rent for the third month in a row, the landlord actually came to their door to \_\_\_\_ them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. In the 1800s, it must have been very difficult to \_\_\_\_ with people who lived far away. Today we are all lucky to have phones and good mail service.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Traveling with Children

a. conflict

b. stress

c. unanimous

d. vary

e. vicinity

Whether I'm driving in the (1)\_\_\_\_\_ of home or farther away, the trip seems to last longer if my kids are in the car. The minute we're on the road, the baby begins to cry and the older children start a major (2)\_\_\_\_\_. These fights (3)\_\_\_\_\_ from time to time, but they often have something to do with one of four primary° complaints:

1. One kid is in the front seat when it's another kid's turn.
2. Someone who had a window seat last time got one again.
3. One of the gang hates the music that another has turned on. (No single radio station has won the (4)\_\_\_\_\_ approval of the children.)
4. One child feels another "is looking at me funny."

Now that I think about it, maybe I can preserve° the peace and lower the level of (5)\_\_\_\_\_ in my life by making the kids take a bus!

### B. Saving Earth's Natural Supplies

f. possess

g. procedure

h. renew

i. resources

j. sufficient

Once some of Earth's valuable (6)\_\_\_\_\_ are used up, it will be impossible to (7)\_\_\_\_\_ them. For example, coal will someday be used up and gone forever.

We do, however, (8)\_\_\_\_\_ other important supplies that can be used over and over. Paper, metals, plastics and glass can be turned into new products again and again by means of recycling. If we don't recycle, who knows what severe° shortages and garbage problems will result? It's up to each of us to have (9)\_\_\_\_\_ interest and foresight° to learn about the recycling methods in our communities and then to follow those (10)\_\_\_\_\_ s.

**abolish**  
**corrupt**  
**decay**  
**expand**  
**flexible**

**nevertheless**  
**precise**  
**reform**  
**tendency**  
**vast**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

- 1 **abolish**  
/ə'bolɪʃ/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Abolish* means

- With our advanced farming methods, why can't we **abolish** hunger?
  - One way for a school district to save money is to **abolish** summer vacation and hold classes all year round.
- a. to make longer.      b. to get rid of.      c. to pay for.

- 2 **corrupt**  
/kə'rʌpt/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Corrupt* means

- A **corrupt** police officer went to prison for selling the drugs he took in a raid.
  - The country was run by a **corrupt** ruler who robbed the rich and poor alike.
- a. not honest.      b. respected.      c. poor.

- 3 **decay**  
/di'keɪ/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Decay* means

- Teeth that are brushed and flossed regularly are not likely to **decay**.
  - Leaves fall from the trees, **decay**, and become part of the forest floor.
- a. to increase.      b. to bend.      c. to rot.

- 4 **expand**  
/ɪk'spænd/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Expand* means

- The grocery is buying the shop next door so that it can **expand** enough to double its space.
  - During a heavy rain, that little creek **expands** into a fast-moving river.
- a. to bend.      b. to break down.      c. to grow.

- 5 **flexible**  
/'fleksəbl/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Flexible* means

- The lamp has a **flexible** neck that can be bent in any direction you need light.
  - Lily is the kind of child who is upset at any change of plan, while Ashley is more **flexible** and able to enjoy doing something unexpected.
- a. able to bend or change.      b. long or tall.      c. useless.

- 6 **nevertheless**  
/ˌnevəðə'les/  
– adverb

\_\_\_ *Nevertheless* means

- Too much sun can cause skin cancer; **nevertheless**, many people want a deep suntan.
  - The doll is old and tattered, but the little boy loves it **nevertheless**.
- a. rarely.      b. because of that.      c. even with that.

- 7 **precise**  
/pri'saɪs/  
– *adjective*
- In baking, it is important to be **precise** when measuring ingredients.
  - We found the house easily, thanks to our host's **precise** directions.
- \_\_\_ *Precise* means      a. exact.      b. busy.      c. strong.
- 8 **reform**  
/ri'fɔ:m/  
– *verb*
- Does serving time in prison **reform** people or only keep them off the streets?
  - Training classes can **reform** dogs so that they don't jump on people and pull on their leashes.
- \_\_\_ *Reform* means      a. to annoy.      b. to make better.      c. to confuse.
- 9 **tendency**  
/'tendənsɪ/  
– *noun*
- Fishermen have a **tendency** to tell big stories about the fish they almost caught.
  - I have a bad **tendency** to put off doing work until the last minute.
- \_\_\_ *Tendency* means      a. hard work.      b. limit.      c. habit.
- 10 **vast**  
/vɑ:st/  
– *adjective*
- Lake Superior is so **vast** that you could easily mistake it for an ocean.
  - The library has a **vast** collection of books for adults, but not so many for children.
- \_\_\_ *Vast* means      a. well-known.      b. gradual.      c. very big.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

- \_\_\_\_\_ To spread out; get larger
- \_\_\_\_\_ To gradually break down; rot
- \_\_\_\_\_ In spite of that; even so
- \_\_\_\_\_ Dishonest; crooked
- \_\_\_\_\_ To cause or persuade to behave better
- \_\_\_\_\_ To put an end to
- \_\_\_\_\_ Exact; correct; accurate
- \_\_\_\_\_ A leaning toward thinking or behaving in a certain way
- \_\_\_\_\_ Very large in size, amount, or area
- \_\_\_\_\_ Able to bend or be bent; able to change or be changed easily

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. abolish	b. corrupt	c. decay	d. expand	e. flexible
f. nevertheless	g. precise	h. reform	i. tendency	j. vast

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. I don't know Hank's \_\_\_\_\_ age, but I guess he's in his mid-fifties.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The sun is shining brightly; \_\_\_\_\_, it is quite chilly outside.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The house is beginning to \_\_\_\_\_. Its windows are broken, and its paint is peeling off.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The high school is going to \_\_\_\_\_ by adding more classrooms.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. My grandfather's hands are stiff when he wakes up, but later in the day they grow more \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Scholars, writers, and researchers from all over the world visit the Library of Congress in Washington, D.C., to make use of its \_\_\_\_\_ collection of books and papers on every topic imaginable.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Former employees told reporters about \_\_\_\_\_ practices in the supermarket, such as soaking spoiling hams in bleach to get rid of the bad smell.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Eli used to answer the phone by yelling, "Who is this?" but a few lessons in phone manners \_\_\_\_\_ed him so that he now says "Hello?" politely.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. I have a \_\_\_\_\_ to talk loudly and quickly when I am nervous.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The restaurant's owner decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the smoking section and make the entire restaurant smoke-free.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. Elena has a \_\_\_\_\_ to be careless and messy at home; \_\_\_\_\_, she is always neat and careful at work.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. Many people feel that to \_\_\_\_\_ politicians and improve politics, it is necessary to \_\_\_\_\_ all gifts of money from groups that wish to influence<sup>o</sup> lawmakers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. The housing project is so \_\_\_\_\_ that you can get lost walking around in it, and it's so poorly cared for that the buildings are starting to \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. The \_\_\_\_\_ crime boss wants his evil business to \_\_\_\_\_ even more; he plans to add gambling operations to his drug business.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. During their trip out West, Mom and Dad kept their plans very \_\_\_\_\_, so we didn't have a \_\_\_\_\_ idea of where they were at any time.

## ➤ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>abolition</b> , <i>noun</i>	Getting rid of something
b. <b>corruption</b> , <i>noun</i>	Making someone bad or dishonest
c. <b>expansion</b> , <i>noun</i>	Making something larger
d. <b>incorruptible</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not able to be made dishonest
e. <b>reformatory</b> , <i>noun</i>	A school for young people who have broken the law

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The \_\_\_\_ of the car factory will create forty-five new jobs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The pastor of that church says that rock music is bad because it leads to the \_\_\_\_ of children.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Because he was only 15 when he committed his crime, Brian was sent to a \_\_\_\_ rather than to the state prison.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Everyone respects Judge Mayer because he is fair, honest, and \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. One of the most important effects of the Civil War was the \_\_\_\_ of slavery in the United States.

f. <b>expandable</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Able to become larger
g. <b>imprecise</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Not correct; not exact
h. <b>inflexible</b> , <i>noun</i>	Not willing to change
i. <b>precision</b> , <i>noun</i>	Exactness; correctness
j. <b>vastness</b> , <i>noun</i>	Great size

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. My boss is \_\_\_\_; she wants to do things only one way — her way.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. During her pregnancy, Midori often wore sweatpants because of their stretchy, \_\_\_\_ waistline.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The bench that I built rocked back and forth because I made \_\_\_\_ measurements before I began cutting.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. During operations, surgeons must make every movement with great \_\_\_\_, or they might do more harm than good. Nobody wants an awkward° surgeon.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. When I lie outside on a summer night, looking up at the sky filled with stars, I begin to think about the \_\_\_\_ of the universe and the smallness of our Earth. Is it possible that we are the sole° planet to have intelligent life?



## ➤ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. **reform**

- a. make better
- c. make sure

- b. make more difficult
- d. get bigger

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. **tendency**

- a. thought
- c. fear

- b. habit of acting in a certain way
- d. making something larger

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. **decay**

- a. build
- c. disappear

- b. continue
- d. spoil

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. **precise**

- a. helpful
- c. dishonest

- b. unclear
- d. exact

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. **nevertheless**

- a. because
- c. despite that

- b. perhaps
- d. sometimes

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. **corrupt**

- a. small
- c. honest

- b. helpless
- d. stiff

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. **flexible**

- a. stiff
- c. gone

- b. small
- d. not correct

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. **vast**

- a. many
- c. incorrect

- b. broken
- d. tiny

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. **expand**

- a. grow stronger
- c. break

- b. get smaller
- d. build

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. **abolish**

- a. end
- c. like

- b. become used to
- d. create

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. More Fat, Anyone?

a. decay  
d. precise

b. expand  
e. vast

c. nevertheless

We know that fatty and sugary foods are bad for us. (1)\_\_\_\_\_, we love to eat them. Demand for food with (2)\_\_\_\_\_ amounts of fat and sugar is high.

To meet the demand for fat, many fast-food giants offer more and bigger high-fat menu items. Pizza Hut sells its Triple Decker Pizza, a health nightmare with as much fat as a stick and a half of butter! McDonald's offers a super-fat triple cheeseburger. And Taco Bell sells a variety° of fatty bacon products. To make matters worse, the fast-food chains offer sugar-filled ice cream, shakes, soda, pies, and cookies that make us fatter and cause our teeth to (3)\_\_\_\_\_. Although fat and sugar are not wholesome° for the customer, they are certainly good for the financial health of the fast-food chains.

Why do we disregard° what science teaches us about a good diet? Researchers cannot explain the (4)\_\_\_\_\_ reasons why we ignore what we know about healthy eating, but one thing is certain. As long as our appetite for fat and sugar continues to increase, our waistlines will continue to (5)\_\_\_\_\_.

### B. Is Prison Effective?

f. abolish  
i. reform

g. corrupt  
j. tendency

h. flexible

There's a lot of disagreement about how to (6)\_\_\_\_\_ criminals and make them good citizens. Today, most of them are sent to prison. But many people believe that serving time in prison does not really make a person less likely to commit another crime. They point out that in prison, a person may spend months or years in the company of more hardened criminals. Will a prisoner in such company come out of jail with the (7)\_\_\_\_\_ to be honest? Not likely, they say — instead, the prisoner will probably learn only how to be more (8)\_\_\_\_\_.

In addition, many people want to (9)\_\_\_\_\_ the death penalty. They believe it is just as wrong to kill a killer as it was for him or her to commit murder in the first place.

Even if you agree with these points, the question remains of how to deal with people who harm others. Some people want prison changed from a place where people are just locked up to a place where prisoners can obtain° an education, job training, and counseling. They want to see the system become (10)\_\_\_\_\_ enough to adjust to a prisoner's needs, rather than treat everyone the same. They want to see prisons influence° prisoners in positive ways.

**assert**  
**clarify**  
**evade**  
**extend**  
**negligent**

**precaution**  
**preconception**  
**resemble**  
**rigid**  
**vertical**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **assert**  
/ə'sɜ:t/  
— verb

\_\_\_ Assert means

- The mayor **asserted** in court that he never took bribes, but the jury did not believe him.
- Every once in a while, the newspapers sold in supermarkets **assert** that Elvis Presley is alive and hiding somewhere.

a. to doubt.                      b. to fear.                      c. to state strongly.

2 **clarify**  
/klærɪfaɪ/  
— verb

\_\_\_ Clarify means

- Mr. Patel is a great math teacher. He can **clarify** even the hardest problems so that everyone can understand.
- I didn't understand my health insurance plan, so I asked someone at the insurance company to **clarify** it for me.

a. to explain.                      b. to create.                      c. to stop.

3 **evade**  
/ɪ'veɪd/  
— verb

\_\_\_ Evade means

- Our dog will do anything to **evade** a bath. Once we get him near the tub, we have to shut the bathroom door, or he will escape.
- In my favorite cops-and-robbers movie, the robbers tried to **evade** the police by leaving through a hole in the roof. However, their plan failed — the police were waiting on the roof!

a. to break down.                      b. to get away from.                      c. to find.

4 **extend**  
/ɪk'stend/  
— verb

\_\_\_ Extend means

- We had so much fun camping that we **extended** our vacation one more day.
- "Because many students are having trouble finishing this project on time," said the instructor, "I will **extend** the deadline by one more week."

a. to make longer or later.                      b. to make clear.                      c. to escape.

5 **negligent**  
/neglɪdʒənt/  
— adjective

\_\_\_ Negligent means

- Our neighbor is **negligent** with her dog — she lets it run loose and dig in other people's yards.
- I was **negligent** in caring for my new plant, and it died.

a. friendly.                      b. paying too little attention.                      c. surprised.

6 **precaution**  
/prɪ'kəʃən/  
— noun

\_\_\_ Precaution means

- We took the **precaution** of having the car tuned up before we began our long trip.
- As you walk in the woods, wear long pants as a **precaution** against poison ivy.

a. cure for a problem.                      b. something stated.                      c. step taken to be safe.

7 **preconception**  
/pri:kən'sepʃən/  
– noun

- From her voice on the phone, I had a **preconception** of my brother's girlfriend as being rather unfriendly.
- Our **preconception** that the party would be boring was completely wrong. Once we got there, we had a great time.

\_\_\_ *Preconception* means    a. wish.                      b. judgment made without experience.                      c. statement of fact.

8 **resemble**  
/rɪ'zembl/  
– verb

- A certain worthless mineral is known as “fool's gold” because it **resembles** real gold. Both minerals are shiny yellow.
- Eating wild mushrooms can be dangerous because a poisonous mushroom sometimes **resembles** one that is safe.

\_\_\_ *Resemble* means    a. to be better than.                      b. to look the same as.                      c. to be easier to find than.

9 **rigid**  
/'rɪdʒɪd/  
– adjective

- Modeling clay is **rigid** when it is cold, but once it warms in your hands it becomes softer and easier to work with.
- The guards outside the palace stood stiffly — they looked as **rigid** as poles.

\_\_\_ *Rigid* means    a. not heavy.                      b. hard to beat.                      c. not bending.

10 **vertical**  
/'vɜ:tɪkəl/  
– adjective

- Clothes with **vertical** stripes generally make the wearer look taller and thinner.
- The dark **vertical** lines of the telephone poles looked striking against the background of the snowy field.

\_\_\_ *Vertical* means    a. very clear.                      b. curving.                      c. up-and-down.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

- \_\_\_\_\_ An opinion formed before having enough information or experience
- \_\_\_\_\_ To look like or be similar to; be like
- \_\_\_\_\_ To make clear or easy to understand
- \_\_\_\_\_ Something done in advance to avoid a problem
- \_\_\_\_\_ Careless
- \_\_\_\_\_ To state positively, often without proof
- \_\_\_\_\_ To escape or avoid through clever action
- \_\_\_\_\_ In a straight up-and-down line; upright
- \_\_\_\_\_ Stiff; not bending
- \_\_\_\_\_ To make longer in time or later in time

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. assert	b. clarify	c. evade	d. extend	e. negligent
f. precaution	g. preconception	h. resemble	i. rigid	j. vertical

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A good math teacher can \_\_\_\_\_ a difficult problem.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The people who want to build the mall \_\_\_\_\_ that it will mean more business for local stores, but the local stores owners do not believe them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The children found a \_\_\_\_\_ board to use as a bridge over the creek.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Eli was a poor worker — he \_\_\_\_\_ responsibility whenever possible.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The instructor \_\_\_\_\_ ed the test so everyone had time to finish.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Before tasting spinach, many kids have the \_\_\_\_\_ they will not like it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Expensive silk roses \_\_\_\_\_ real roses.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. It was \_\_\_\_\_ of you to play soccer in the house — you must have known you could break something.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Remember to put on sunblock lotion as a \_\_\_\_\_ against sunburn.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. As we got closer to New York City, we saw the \_\_\_\_\_ shape of the tall Empire State Building against the bright summer sky.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. It was \_\_\_\_\_ of the town to open a swimming pool without taking the \_\_\_\_\_ of hiring a lifeguard first.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. Because Krista \_\_\_\_\_ s her sister physically, I had the \_\_\_\_\_ that she would have a similar personality, but the two girls are actually very different.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. A reporter said the mayor's views on taxes were unclear, and he asked the mayor to \_\_\_\_\_ her ideas. However, the Mayor \_\_\_\_\_ d the question by saying, "Who can think about taxes when our basketball team is about to win the state championship?"
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. The new advertisements for the motor oil \_\_\_\_\_ that using the oil is guaranteed to \_\_\_\_\_ the life of your car.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. To make a playhouse, Mac began with four \_\_\_\_\_ pieces of wood. He stuck one end of each deep in the ground, so that each piece of wood was in a \_\_\_\_\_ position.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>clarification</b> , <i>noun</i>	Explanation
b. <b>conception</b> , <i>noun</i>	An idea or thought
c. <b>extension</b> , <i>noun</i>	An increase in time
d. <b>negligence</b> , <i>noun</i>	Carelessness
e. <b>rigidity</b> , <i>noun</i>	Stiffness; inability or unwillingness to change

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The children were scolded for their \_\_\_\_ in leaving the cover off the ant farm and letting all the ants escape.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. My boss gave me a two-day \_\_\_\_ to my vacation so that I can go on a ten-day trip with my family.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Many students had trouble understanding the science assignment, so the instructor took some class time for a \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A young child's \_\_\_\_ of heaven is a place where angels live on clouds.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. I found Emmet hard to live with because of his \_\_\_\_\_. He found it almost impossible to accept change and other people's ways of doing things.

f. <b>assertion</b> , <i>noun</i>	A statement made positively but without proof
g. <b>assertive</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Able to stand up for oneself and say what one thinks or wants
h. <b>clarity</b> , <i>noun</i>	Clearness of thought and choice of words
i. <b>evasion</b> , <i>noun</i>	The act of avoiding something
j. <b>resemblance</b> , <i>noun</i>	Similar appearance

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Jay should be more \_\_\_\_\_. If he is served the wrong meal in a restaurant, he eats it rather than speaking up to say there has been a mistake.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Few people believed the man's \_\_\_\_ that he had been kidnapped by aliens.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Bok choy is a popular Chinese vegetable that has a \_\_\_\_ to cabbage, to which it is related.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. It is very helpful when a textbook is written with great \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The businessman avoided paying taxes for years, but he was finally caught and went to jail for tax \_\_\_\_\_. He had been so dishonest with so many people that nobody sympathized<sup>o</sup> with him or felt sorry to see him go to prison.

## Word Parts

- A The prefix *ex-* can mean “beyond” or “out.”

**Examples:** *extraordinary*° — beyond the ordinary

*excerpt*° — a part that is taken out of a whole work

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

a. **excerpt**°

b. **exclude**°

c. **extend**

d. **external**°

e. **extraordinary**°

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Since so many people had something to say, the meeting was \_\_\_\_ed another thirty minutes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. A TV show titled *That's Entertainment* includes \_\_\_\_s from many wonderful musical films.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When the children play, they prefer to \_\_\_\_ Hank because he is such a bully.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. You are supposed to cut off the \_\_\_\_ layer of the kiwi fruit before eating it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Mrs. Martin is an \_\_\_\_ woman. She has brought up four wonderful children by herself and also built a fine career at a bank where she is now a vice president.

- B. The prefix *pre-* often means “before.”

**Examples:** *precaution* — something done beforehand to avoid a problem

*preserve*° — to protect or keep in good condition, before there's a problem

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **preconception**

g. **preheat**

h. **prepare**

i. **preserve**°

j. **pretest**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. To \_\_\_\_ for the trip, I have to wash and pack a lot of clothes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Sometimes the math instructors gives students a \_\_\_\_ to help them see if they are ready for the real test.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The brownie recipe says to \_\_\_\_ the oven to 350 degrees.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. To \_\_\_\_ her wedding dress for her daughter, Mrs. Henry keeps it covered in plastic and in a box.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. New college students often have the \_\_\_\_ that instructors will remind them about assignments and tests. But in college, students must keep track of such things themselves.

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. She Changed My Mind

a. clarify

b. extend

c. preconception

d. resemble

e. rigid

When I entered a Catholic school as a third-grader, I was very scared. The teachers were nuns, and although I had never known any nuns myself, I had a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of what a nun would be like. I pictured a hostile<sup>o</sup> woman dressed in a strange robe and sitting stiffly, as (2) \_\_\_\_\_ as the ruler in her hand, and frowning when I forgot the answers to her questions. I imagined her deciding to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ my school day by several hours after everyone else went home.

By the time I actually arrived in the classroom, I would not have been surprised if the teacher had fire coming out of her nostrils. Imagine my surprise, then, when I saw a pretty young woman standing at the front of the classroom. "Good morning!" she said cheerily. "My name is Sister Mary Elizabeth." I stared at her in surprise. She (4) \_\_\_\_\_d my favorite aunt. Her face was not cold as I had expected, but warm and smiling. When she stopped by my desk later that morning to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ an arithmetic problem, she knelt beside me and gave my ponytail a gentle, playful tug. One day in class was sufficient<sup>o</sup> for me to fall in love with Sister Mary Elizabeth and to realize how little I had really known about nuns.

### B. So Sue Me

f. assert

g. evade

h. negligent

i. precaution

j. vertical

"I'll sue!" This threat is all too often carried out. Americans have a strong tendency<sup>o</sup> to bring one another to court.

Take the case of the teenager who walked down the street, listening to music through the headphones of his personal stereo. He came to a curb and stepped into the street. A car running through a red light nearly hit him. Because he was listening to music, he had not heard the car coming. Did he sue the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ driver? No — he sued the maker of the stereo. He claimed the stereo should have come with a note telling him to take the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of removing the stereo when he was crossing a street.

Another well-known case involved a similar circumstance<sup>o</sup>. A woman sued a fast-food chain for serving her coffee that was too hot. She spilled the coffee in her own lap, burned herself, and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ed that the restaurant was to blame.

What is next? Should ice-cream cones carry warning labels saying, "Keep the cone in a (9) \_\_\_\_\_ position or else the ice cream might fall off"? It seems that suing someone else has become yet another way for people to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ taking responsibility for their own actions.



# CHAPTER 24

**anxious**  
**comprehend**  
**convince**  
**dramatic**  
**frank**

**illustrate**  
**impression**  
**inferior**  
**overwhelm**  
**thorough**

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **anxious**

/ˈæŋkʃəs/

– adjective

\_\_\_ *Anxious* means

- Dean was **anxious** about his new job. He worried about doing well and whether he would like his supervisor.
- You seemed **anxious** before the test, but you look more relaxed now.

a. sure.                                      b. troubled.                                      c. late.

2 **comprehend**

/ˌkɒmpriˈhend/

– verb

\_\_\_ *Comprehend* means

- Although my Japanese friend knew English pretty well when she came to this country, she did not **comprehend** such slang terms as “cool” and “gross.”
- I cannot **comprehend** how a computer works, but at least I understand how to use one for writing papers.

a. to believe.                                      b. to remember.                                      c. to understand.

3 **convince**

/kənˈvins/

– verb

\_\_\_ *Convince* means

- The lawyer is sure she can **convince** the jury that her client is innocent.
- Cindy tried to **convince** her roommate that she had not stolen her necklace, but her roommate still did not believe her.

a. to learn from.                                      b. to cause to believe.                                      c. to keep from.

4 **dramatic**

/drəˈmætɪk/

– adjective

\_\_\_ *Dramatic* means

- To hold our attention, our gym teacher used **dramatic** movements, such as waving her arms or jumping.
- Mr. Johnson prefers not to be noticed when he enters a room, but Mrs. Johnson enjoys making **dramatic** entrances, such as by swirling a bright purple cape around her shoulders.

a. distant.                                      b. usual.                                      c. attracting attention.

5 **frank**

/fræŋk/

– adjective

\_\_\_ *Frank* means

- Mrs. Robins told her doctor, “Please be **frank** with me. If you know what is wrong with me, please tell me the truth.”
- “To be **frank**,” my sister said to me, “your new hairdo looks as if you had stuck your finger into an electrical socket.”

a. careful.                                      b. honest.                                      c. worried.

6 **illustrate**

/ˈɪləstreɪt/

– verb

\_\_\_ *Illustrate* means

- Whenever Mrs. Fine wanted to teach us a new word, she **illustrated** its use in a sentence.
- Pastor Gibson **illustrated** his point about forgiving by telling a story about one victim who learned to forgive his attacker.

a. to explain with an example.                                      b. to change.                                      c. to make difficult.

**7 impression**

/ɪmˈpreʃən/

– noun

- My first **impression** of Leroy was that he was loud and rude, but spending time with him showed me that under all the noise was a warm, friendly person.
- I had the **impression** that Vicky was coming on the ski trip, but at the last minute I learned that she had never really planned to come.

\_\_\_ *Impression* means

- a. argument.                      b. rule.                      c. opinion.

**8 inferior**

/ɪnˈfɪəriə(r)/

– adjective

- Silver is considered to be **inferior** to gold, but I still prefer silver jewelry.
- Joan's basketball skills are **inferior** to those of the other team members, but the coach believes Joan will improve quickly.

\_\_\_ *Inferior to* means

- a. just like.                      b. worse than.                      c. new to.

**9 overwhelm**

/əʊvəˈhweɪlm/

– verb

- You will **overwhelm** children if you give too many instructions at one time.
- A gang of teens **overwhelmed** the old man, holding him down while they took his money.

\_\_\_ *Overwhelm* means

- a. to encourage.                      b. to overpower.                      c. to watch.

**10 thorough**

/ˈθʌrə/

– adjective

- After a **thorough** search of every corner of my apartment, I finally found my glasses — in my pocket.
- Before signing up your children at a day-care center, do a **thorough** check of how kind and well-trained the staff are.

\_\_\_ *Thorough* means

- a. quick.                      b. careful.                      c. exciting.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Honest and open; sincere
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Lower in value or quality
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Complete; very carefully done
4. \_\_\_\_\_ To understand completely
5. \_\_\_\_\_ To make clear, as with an example, picture, or demonstration°
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Worried; troubled; fearful about what might happen
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Having very exciting, interesting qualities; striking; very noticeable
8. \_\_\_\_\_ A belief, opinion, or thought — often based on little information
9. \_\_\_\_\_ To persuade by argument or proof
10. \_\_\_\_\_ To make mentally, emotionally, or physically helpless with too much of something; overpower

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➤ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. <b>anxious</b>	b. <b>comprehend</b>	c. <b>convince</b>	d. <b>dramatic</b>	e. <b>frank</b>
f. <b>illustrate</b>	g. <b>impression</b>	h. <b>inferior</b>	i. <b>overwhelm</b>	j. <b>thorough</b>

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. If you say that you \_\_\_\_ a math problem, it means you understand it well.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. A grade of C is \_\_\_\_ to a B.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Your first \_\_\_\_ of people is the same thing as your first opinion of them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Too much confusing work would \_\_\_\_ anyone.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. It usually takes more time to do a \_\_\_\_ job than a sloppy one.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Something frightening or troubling makes people \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. A \_\_\_\_ outfit is unusual and will attract attention.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. A \_\_\_\_ person is likely to tell you just what he or she thinks of your new hairdo, instead of giving you false compliments.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. It should take proof to \_\_\_\_ a jury that someone is guilty.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. A good way to make an idea more clear is to \_\_\_\_ it in some way. To do so, you might use an example or a picture.

➤ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1–2. Karla's bright lipstick, false eyelashes, and \_\_\_\_ red dress gave me the \_\_\_\_ that she liked to attract attention to herself.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3–4. Many people would feel \_\_\_\_ about moving to a foreign country, especially if they did not \_\_\_\_ the language.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5–6. My boss is so \_\_\_\_ that she will often tell us stories about her own mistakes to \_\_\_\_ her instructions.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7–8. A mother in the shoe store was trying to \_\_\_\_ her child not to choose a certain pair of shoes. "You like them because they have your favorite cartoon character on them," she explained, "but they are so \_\_\_\_ to this other pair that they will fall apart in a month."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9–10. "Don't let this big exam \_\_\_\_ you," said the instructor. "We've done a \_\_\_\_ job of reviewing the material, and I'm sure you will all do well."

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>anxiety</b> , <i>noun</i>	Worry; fear
b. <b>comprehension</b> , <i>noun</i>	Understanding
c. <b>conviction</b> , <i>noun</i>	A strong belief
d. <b>frankness</b> , <i>noun</i>	Honesty
e. <b>impress</b> , <i>verb</i>	Affect; influence°

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. "You're right; I was speeding," the driver told the police officers, hoping to please them with his \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. As I waited to hear how badly my car was damaged, I tried to control my \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. My mother always had a \_\_\_\_ that you should help people less fortunate than yourself.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The lecture on the planets and stars was beyond the \_\_\_\_ of many people in the audience.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. What adults do may \_\_\_\_ young children. For instance, if an adult they respect smokes, they are likely to think that smoking must be OK.

f. <b>drama</b> , <i>noun</i>	A play, or an event having exciting, play-like qualities
g. <b>dramatize</b> , <i>verb</i>	To turn into a play
h. <b>illustrator</b> , <i>noun</i>	A person who creates pictures for books, magazines, etc.
i. <b>inferiority</b> , <i>noun</i>	Poor quality as compared with something else
j. <b>impressive</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Having a strong positive effect

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Some wonderful children's books were created by a famous husband-and-wife team; she is the writer, and he is the \_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. In many ads, advertisers will talk about the \_\_\_\_ of other brands compared with their own. Of course, they always assert° that their own product is the best.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Other drivers often slow down and stare at an accident, attracted by the \_\_\_\_ of the scene.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The TV movie \_\_\_\_d the life of Cesar Chavez, who fought for the rights of migrant workers. He tried to reform° the way farm employers treat their workers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The high-school basketball player's performance was so \_\_\_\_ that several college teams wanted the player to join them.

## ➤ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. **Synonyms.** Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. **convince**

- a. point out
- c. persuade

- b. study
- d. fear

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. **dramatic**

- a. helpful
- c. confusing

- b. striking
- d. not well-known

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. **illustrate**

- a. have faith
- c. explain

- b. work hard
- d. argue

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. **impression**

- a. belief
- c. news

- b. proof
- d. honesty

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. **overwhelm**

- a. delay
- c. overpower

- b. make clear
- d. overwork

B. **Antonyms.** Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. **anxious**

- a. calm
- c. busy

- b. forgetful
- d. lonely

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. **comprehend**

- a. pretend
- c. find

- b. know
- d. misunderstand

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. **frank**

- a. certain
- c. humorous

- b. expert
- d. dishonest

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. **inferior**

- a. far away
- c. better

- b. well-known
- d. simple

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. **thorough**

- a. truthful
- c. sensible

- b. risky
- d. incomplete

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Fear of Public Speaking

a. **anxious**  
d. **overwhelm**

b. **convince**  
e. **thorough**

c. **inferior**

I get (1)\_\_\_\_\_ even thinking about getting up in front of the whole class to give my history report. I don't know why I'm so worried. I guess I'm afraid that I will humiliate° myself. I have done a (2)\_\_\_\_\_ job of preparing my report — I don't think I've left anything important out. I guess I compare myself with others and worry about whether my work is (3)\_\_\_\_\_ to theirs. I hope that my fears won't (4)\_\_\_\_\_ me and prevent me from doing a good job. I'll have to (5)\_\_\_\_\_ myself that as long as I have made an effort, my report will be OK.

### B. Mrs. Thornton's Condition

f. **comprehend**  
i. **illustrate**

g. **dramatic**  
j. **impression**

h. **frank**

Adults should be honest with children. I can (6)\_\_\_\_\_ this point by telling how I and my fellow first-graders suffered when our teacher had a baby. It wasn't that we didn't like babies or that we didn't like Mrs. Thornton. Most of us loved them both. The problem was that we did not realize she was pregnant, so her (7)\_\_\_\_\_ growth frightened us. Could that happen to us some day? Would we balloon up for no reason? Also, we were worried about her. But even when we made our concern evident° by asking what was happening to her, she gave us only silly answers like "I guess I ate too much breakfast!"

Finally, one day she didn't appear at school. Instead, our principal simply announced, "Mrs. Thornton will not be your teacher anymore." We were left with the (8)\_\_\_\_\_ that something awful had happened to her. We were fearful and sad. Fortunately, the substitute teacher who took Mrs. Thornton's place saw our tearful faces and realized we did not (9)\_\_\_\_\_ the situation. She explained that Mrs. Thornton had just had a baby and that she was fine and very happy. But we could have been saved a great deal of worry and fear if the adults in our lives had just been more (10)\_\_\_\_\_ with us and had clarified° the situation.

# CHAPTER 25

acquire  
commitment  
formal  
fragment  
fundamental

precede  
resent  
solemn  
spite  
symbolize

## Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **acquire**  
/ə'kwairə(r)/  
— verb

- While living in England, Brad **acquired** a little bit of an English accent.
- Before going on the trip, I **acquired** a good pair of hiking boots.

\_\_\_ *Acquire* means

- a. to appreciate.                      b. to get.                      c. to do without.

2 **commitment**  
/kə'mitmənt/  
— noun

- Nita has made a **commitment** to stop smoking this year.
- The Greens made a **commitment** to give 5 percent of their income to charity.

\_\_\_ *Commitment* means

- a. promise.                      b. piece.                      c. symbol.

3 **formal**  
/'fɔ:məl/  
— adjective

- Because my boss is a rather **formal** person, I never call him by his first name or try to joke with him.
- A **formal** wedding can be very expensive, so Julie and Ed have decided on a casual wedding in the park.

\_\_\_ *Formal* means

- a. interesting.                      b. traditional and proper.                      c. full of hope.

4 **fragment**  
/'frægmənt/  
— noun

- Don't go into the kitchen barefoot. I broke a glass, and there may still be a **fragment** on the floor.
- Scientists digging up an ancient city found a piece of pottery which they think is a **fragment** of a bowl.

\_\_\_ *Fragment* means

- a. whole.                      b. copy.                      c. small part.

5 **fundamental**  
/'fʌndə'mentəl/  
— adjective

- A **fundamental** rule of water safety is this: Don't go swimming alone.
- One must learn the **fundamental** operations of arithmetic before going on to algebra.

\_\_\_ *Fundamental* means

- a. based on fun.                      b. unusual.                      c. needing to be learned first.

6 **precede**  
/'pri:'si:d/  
— verb

- Do you think that friendship **precedes** love in a relationship? Or does love come first?
- On the East Coast, the 11 o'clock news **precedes** the *Tonight Show*, which begins at 11:30.

\_\_\_ *Precede* means

- a. to come before.                      b. to be part of.                      c. to stand for.

7 **resent**  
/rɪˈzɛnt/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Resent* means

- The voters **resent** the fact that the mayor made promises he did not keep after his election.
- People often **resent** being given advice they did not ask for.
  - a. to feel bitter about.
  - b. to feel better about.
  - c. to feel frightened by.

8 **solemn**  
/ˈsɒləm/  
– adjective

\_\_\_ *Solemn* means

- The fire chief told some jokes to get the children's attention. But when he began to speak about not playing with matches, he became **solemn**.
- The group of laughing children became **solemn** when they heard that their friend had been injured.
  - a. hard to understand.
  - b. silly.
  - c. serious.

9 **spite**  
/spait/  
– noun

\_\_\_ *Spite* means

- Turning against her former friend, the girl said with **spite** in her voice, "Everyone thinks you're a real loser."
- The disk jockeys' **spite** toward each other was obvious — each of them said nasty things about the other on the air.
  - a. puzzlement.
  - b. hate.
  - c. sense of humor.

10 **symbolize**  
/ˈsɪmbəlaɪz/  
– verb

\_\_\_ *Symbolize* means

- In ancient Egypt, a picture of a small circle with a dot in the middle **symbolized** the sun.
- During World War II, holding two fingers up in a V stood for victory; during the 1960s, it **symbolized** peace.
  - a. to be like.
  - b. to stand for.
  - c. to point toward.

## Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Proper; not casual; according to custom or tradition
2. \_\_\_\_\_ A promise to do something; pledge
3. \_\_\_\_\_ To get through one's own actions; gain something as one's own
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Basic; forming a foundation; essential
5. \_\_\_\_\_ A small piece broken off something whole
6. \_\_\_\_\_ To feel angered and injured by
7. \_\_\_\_\_ An unfriendly feeling that causes one to want to hurt or shame another
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To stand for; be a symbol of
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Serious and respectful
10. \_\_\_\_\_ To come before

**CAUTION:** Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.



➤ **Sentence Check 1**

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. acquire	b. commitment	c. formal	d. fragment	e. fundamental
f. precede	g. resent	h. solemn	i. spite	j. symbolize

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. When I dropped the blue china vase, it broke into \_\_\_\_s.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The neighbors' \_\_\_\_ to keep their street beautiful shows in their neat lawns and lovely flower gardens.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Instead of having a \_\_\_\_ class, the instructor and students held a picnic.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Every year, the library \_\_\_\_s about two hundred new books.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Pamela felt such \_\_\_\_ toward her ex-husband that she went through their family photographs and cut his picture out of every one of them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. I \_\_\_\_ the way my roommate cooks late-night snacks and then leaves dirty dishes for me to clean up.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. When I go to a movie theater, I try to get there early enough so that I can see the ads that \_\_\_\_ the film.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Jerome is usually lighthearted, but he becomes \_\_\_\_ when he talks about his brother's struggle with mental illness.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. There are lots of rules about good manners, but the \_\_\_\_ idea behind them all is this: Treat people the way you wish they would treat you.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. At the Academy Awards, many actors wore little red ribbons to \_\_\_\_ their concern for people living with AIDS.

➤ **Sentence Check 2**

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1-2. To remind themselves of why they are saving money, Sam and Christi \_\_\_\_d a dollhouse to \_\_\_\_ the real house they hope to buy someday.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3-4. Everyone was very \_\_\_\_ at the much-loved doctor's funeral. Many people expressed their \_\_\_\_ to carrying on his good works and keeping his memory alive.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5-6. On graduation day, the principal's speech, which \_\_\_\_s the handing out of diplomas, is always very \_\_\_\_\_. But afterward, one of the teachers gives a casual, funny talk.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7-8. When Ray was ordered to share his toy with his sister, he showed his \_\_\_\_ by breaking the toy into pieces and handing the \_\_\_\_s to the girl.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9-10. Maya \_\_\_\_s the fact that Will told her secret to other people. By doing that, he broke a \_\_\_\_ rule of friendship.

## ➤ Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. <b>acquisition</b> , <i>noun</i>	Something that has been gotten; something owned
b. <b>formality</b> , <i>noun</i>	An act done only to follow a rule
c. <b>fragmented</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Broken up
d. <b>solemnity</b> , <i>noun</i>	Seriousness
e. <b>symbol</b> , <i>noun</i>	Something that stands for something else

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. My sister apologized for asking to see my driver's license when I wrote a check at the store where she worked. "It's just a \_\_\_\_\_," she said, "but the boss gets mad if I don't do it for everybody."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. My mother's family is so \_\_\_\_\_ that she doesn't even know where some of her brothers and sisters live.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When I heard the tone of \_\_\_\_\_ in my mother's voice, I knew something important had happened.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A red heart is a \_\_\_\_\_ of love or friendship; on Valentine's Day, people put hearts on Valentine's cards, hang them in windows, and make heart-shaped cakes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Myra collects stamps, so every time I visit her I have to look at her newest \_\_\_\_\_.

f. <b>commit</b> , <i>verb</i>	To seriously agree (to doing something)
g. <b>predecessor</b> , <i>noun</i>	One who held a position or job before another
h. <b>resentment</b> , <i>noun</i>	Bad feelings due to a sense of having been hurt
i. <b>spitefully</b> , <i>adverb</i>	In a manner filled with meanness
j. <b>symbolic</b> , <i>adjective</i>	Using symbols

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Still angry over her parents' divorce, Alma felt great \_\_\_\_\_ toward her new stepmother.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The new cook at the restaurant is not as good as his \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. If you are going to join the basketball team, you must \_\_\_\_\_ to practicing twice a week.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. At some weddings, the newlyweds each take a candle and then use it to light a third candle, a \_\_\_\_\_ way of showing that their two lives are being joined.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Angry that he hadn't gotten the raise he asked for, Marv \_\_\_\_\_ dropped a paper clip into the office copying machine and jammed it.

## ➤ Analogies

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. PRECEDE : FOLLOW ::

- a. hurry : rush
- c. speak : talk

- b. earlier : later
- d. bother : annoy

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. SPITE : BITTERNESS ::

- a. insult : compliment
- c. love : hate

- b. abolish° : keep
- d. friendship : affection

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. ACQUIRE : OWN ::

- a. get : possess°
- c. locate : lose

- b. clarify° : confuse
- d. buy : sell

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. SOLEMN : PLAYFUL ::

- a. funny : laughter
- c. ugly : talented

- b. fun : party
- d. exciting : boring

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. FRAGMENT : WHOLE ::

- a. law school : lawyer
- c. dog : German shepherd

- b. fixed : broken
- d. page : book

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. HONEST : CORRUPT° ::

- a. early : late
- c. start : begin

- b. fundamental : basic
- d. symbolize : flag

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. OIL : RESOURCES° ::

- a. hate : love
- c. uncle : relatives

- b. give : gift
- d. coal : mine

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. FLEXIBLE° : RIGID° ::

- a. old : ancient
- c. food : grapes

- b. ball : bat
- d. peace : war

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. VERTICAL° : TELEPHONE POLE ::

- a. sufficient° : enough
- c. cold : summer

- b. flat : table
- d. gray : black

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. EXTEND° : SHORTEN ::

- a. frank° : honest
- c. precise° : exact

- b. easy : difficult
- d. wear : necklace

## ➤ Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

### A. Wacky Weddings

a. commitment

b. formal

c. fundamental

d. precede

e. symbolize

The ingredients needed for a wedding are pretty basic. They include two people who have decided to get married and someone qualified to marry them. But from the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ ingredients, people create an amazing variety° of ceremonies. Some weddings are very (2) \_\_\_\_\_. In those, the bride and groom wear traditional outfits — a fancy white dress for her, a tuxedo for him — and have bridesmaids and groomsmen. During such customary° weddings, the groom (3) \_\_\_\_\_s the bride down the aisle, and afterward, they leave hand in hand. But some people like their weddings to be playful rather than traditional. One man and woman got married while dressed as clowns. Another couple were married while riding a roller coaster. Yet others have said “I do” while they were skydiving or ice skating.

Is an “offbeat” wedding any less meaningful than a traditional one? The couples that choose very different weddings say no. They say the most important thing is the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ that they are making to one another. In the case of the two clowns, they said that their unusual wedding (5) \_\_\_\_\_d their desire to keep fun in their marriage.

### B. The Cost of Hatred

f. acquire

g. fragment

h. resent

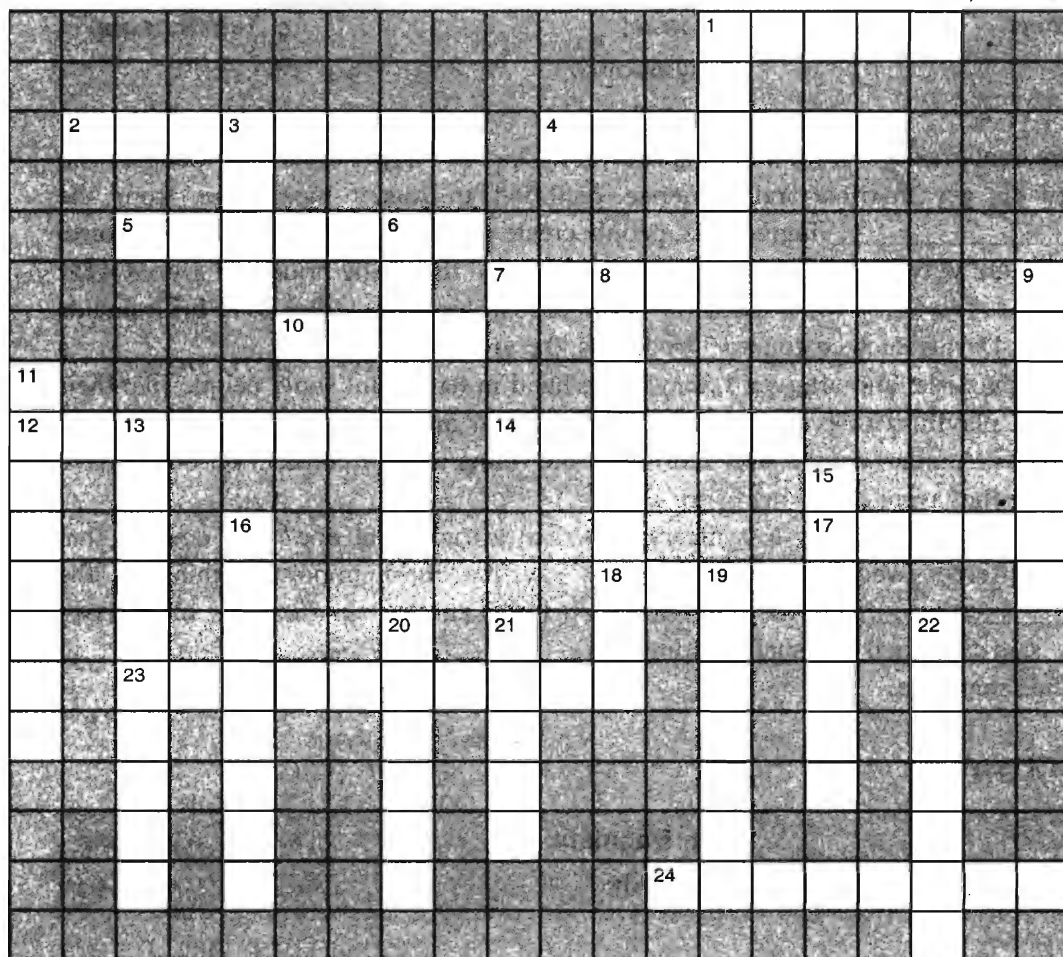
i. solemn

j. spite

An old story illustrates° the nature of (6) \_\_\_\_\_ and the terrible effects such meanness can have on people. There were two merchants in a village. They had grown up together, and each always (7) \_\_\_\_\_ed what the other did. No one could remember why the two men had first quarreled. But by the time they were middle-aged, their hatred of one another influenced° their lives greatly. Neither could bear to see the other happy or successful. If one of them (8) \_\_\_\_\_d a new house, the other had to get a bigger, better one. If one man’s shop did well, the other was furious until his did better. One day, one of the men dropped an old jar that had been sitting on a shelf for years. It broke into (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Immediately, a mighty genie appeared. “Oh, lucky man!” said the genie. “You have a great opportunity, for I will grant you any wish. But first I must give you one small warning. Whatever you wish for yourself, your enemy will receive in double measure. If you wish for a million dollars, he will receive two million. If you ask for a golden castle, he will have two.” The man became (10) \_\_\_\_\_ and thought deeply. There were many wonderful things he could ask for, but he could not bear to think of his lifelong enemy receiving twice as much as he did. Finally he thought of an answer to his problem. A sickly smile spread over his face as he made his wish. “I wish, genie,” he said, “that you would beat me half to death.”

## UNIT FIVE: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit Five. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



abolish  
anxious  
clarify  
commitment  
conflict  
convince  
corrupt  
decay  
dramatic  
evade  
formal  
fragment  
frank  
negligent  
possess  
precede  
precise  
resemble  
rigid  
solemn  
stress  
sufficient  
thorough  
vary  
vast

### ACROSS

1. Honest and open; sincere
2. To persuade by argument or proof
4. To make clear or easy to understand
5. Dishonest; crooked
7. A quarrel or fight; disagreement
10. Very large in size, amount, or area
12. To look like or be similar to
14. Serious and respectful
17. Stiff; not bending

18. To escape or avoid through clever action
23. A promise to do something
24. Complete; very carefully done

### DOWN

1. Proper; not casual; according to custom or tradition
3. To become different or to be different; change
6. To own; have
8. Careless
9. To come before
11. A small piece broken off something whole
13. As much as is needed
15. Exact; correct; accurate
16. Having very exciting, interesting qualities; striking; very noticeable
19. To put an end to
20. Mental or emotional tension; strain
21. To gradually break down; rot
22. Worried; troubled; fearful about what might happen

## UNIT FIVE: Test 1

### PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Some of the new \_\_\_\_ for treating cancer are quicker and less unpleasant than older ones.  
a. vicinities      b. fragments      c. conflicts      d. procedures
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. In court, the decision of the jury must be \_\_\_\_\_. If even one juror has a different opinion, the decision doesn't count.  
a. negligent      b. vertical      c. solemn      d. unanimous
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When we lived in the \_\_\_\_ of a railroad, we got so used to the noise of trains that we stopped noticing it.  
a. resources      b. vicinity      c. precaution      d. tendency
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Marie's moods \_\_\_\_ with the weather. She's cheerful when the sun shines and gloomy when it's cloudy.  
a. decay      b. precede      c. abolish      d. vary
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Even good events can create \_\_\_\_ in people's lives. For example, researchers have found that there's even more strain in getting married than in being fired from one's job.  
a. fragment      b. stress      c. resource      d. precaution
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. To \_\_\_\_ how much smell affects taste, our teacher had us eat a banana while smelling an onion.  
a. evade      b. illustrate      c. resent      d. overwhelm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Emily went through life feeling \_\_\_\_ to her brother, who she believed was more intelligent and talented than she could ever be.  
a. inferior      b. negligent      c. thorough      d. formal
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The new principal wants to \_\_\_\_ report cards. The kids love the idea of having no report cards, but the teachers do not.  
a. abolish      b. corrupt      c. overwhelm      d. expand
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. When Jared's father asked, "What time did you come in last night?" Jared tried to \_\_\_\_ the question by answering, "I wasn't wearing a watch."  
a. comprehend      b. resent      c. evade      d. symbolize
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. When I take jeans off the clothesline, they often feel \_\_\_\_, so I shake them or put them in the clothes dryer for a few minutes to make them soft again.  
a. anxious      b. dramatic      c. fundamental      d. rigid

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Myrna's purple and black living room is certainly \_\_\_\_, but I prefer something a little less showy.  
a. corrupt      b. flexible      c. precise      d. dramatic
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. From the smile on Rico's face, you might have the \_\_\_\_ that he has no problems. The truth is, however, that his parents are both quite ill, and he lost his job two weeks ago.  
a. commitment      b. precaution      c. impression      d. fragment
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. The Masons were not very happy when their daughter \_\_\_\_ a nose-ring.  
a. extended      b. reformed      c. acquired      d. preceded

## PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. I used to be *anxious* about going to the dentist, but then I started going to Dr. Craine. He's so funny and nice that I just can't feel afraid of him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 15. Ms. Acosta is respected for being a *corrupt* teacher — she'll make you work hard, but you'll gain a lot from her course.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 16. It is impossible to cut the steak with these plastic forks and knives — they are so *flexible* that they snap into pieces as soon as you press hard on them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 17. Because I missed the first fifteen minutes of the movie, I didn't really *comprehend* the rest of the story.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 18. Even though the police believe that Frank robbed the liquor store, they don't yet have *sufficient* evidence to arrest him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 19. Parties at the Schroeders' house are rather *formal*, with guests taking off their shoes, helping themselves to food out of the refrigerator, and generally acting at home.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 20. I was *frank* enough to tell Edna that she looked lovely in her new purple dress, even though I really thought it made her look like an eggplant.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 21. After angrily tearing up her boyfriend's letter, Elaine wanted to read it again, so she glued the *fragments* back together.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 22. Whenever Mr. Fletcher goes for a walk, he *precedes* his dog. The dog runs ahead, pulling Mr. Fletcher by the leash.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 23. Mac did a *thorough* job of cleaning our windows; they seem almost invisible.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 24. The natural *resources* of South Africa include gold and diamonds.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 25. The teacher wanted to *overwhelm* his new students, so he gave them just a little homework at first.

<b>Score</b> (Number correct) _____ × 4 = _____ %
---

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## UNIT FIVE: Test 2

### PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. assert	b. conflict	c. convince	d. decay	e. expand
f. fundamental	g. precaution	h. precise	i. renew	j. resemble
k. solemn	l. symbolize	m. tendency		

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Two robins in the yard were having a noisy \_\_\_\_ over a worm that they both wanted to eat.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. In a forest, fallen trees \_\_\_\_ until they become part of the earth on the forest floor.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When making a pair of pants, your measurements have to be \_\_\_\_ if you want the pants to fit well.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Small dogs are quick and lively; large dogs have a \_\_\_\_ to be quiet and slow-moving.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The TV ad \_\_\_\_s that this little eight-pound vacuum cleaner does a better job than many full-size vacuums.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. When Buck plans to eat a big dinner, he wears a pair of pants with a waist that \_\_\_\_s.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Ella is so worried about a house fire that every time she leaves home, she takes the \_\_\_\_ of unplugging all the lamps, the toaster, and the TV.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. In my opinion, the smell of blue cheese \_\_\_\_s the smell of an old running shoe.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Even though I had homework to do, Raoul \_\_\_\_d me I should go skating with him instead, telling me, "The exercise will wake up your brain."
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. My parents were not strict about housekeeping, but they did have two \_\_\_\_ rules: we had to make our beds every morning, and we were never allowed to leave unwashed dishes overnight.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Some paper companies are taking steps to \_\_\_\_ the forests they are cutting down, so that in the future, the forests will still be there.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. Although everyone was \_\_\_\_ at my grandfather's funeral, there was laughter at the luncheon afterward, when people began telling loving, funny stories about him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. In many Christian religions, the dove is used in stories and pictures to \_\_\_\_ peace.

(Continues on next page)



## PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

- \_\_\_ 14. The thing that prisoners *possess* most is freedom.
- \_\_\_ 15. In some companies, workers can *extend* their workday by two hours and then enjoy three-day weekends.
- \_\_\_ 16. The day was hot and sunny; *nevertheless*, almost no one showed up to use the city swimming pool.
- \_\_\_ 17. It is a shame how spending time with the wrong people has *reformed* Nathan. He used to be a nice guy, but now he's rude and not exactly honest.
- \_\_\_ 18. Most department stores have a few computer games for sale, but you have to go to a computer store for a really *vast* selection of games.
- \_\_\_ 19. When Thomas tried to explain how the accident happened, he was so excited and confused that he only *clarified* the story.
- \_\_\_ 20. Bonnie is a *negligent* baby sitter, always making sure the children are safely in bed and the house is cleaned up before the parents come home.
- \_\_\_ 21. Although I had the *preconception* that Mrs. Arnold would be a difficult person to work for, I soon came to like her very much.
- \_\_\_ 22. I painted a line from the left edge of the wall all the way over to the right edge, and then I covered that *vertical* line with a colorful border design.
- \_\_\_ 23. The police arrested a man who wrote a *commitment* describing how he had robbed the video store.
- \_\_\_ 24. I *resent* what my brother did — after I told him what I was going to buy for our mother's birthday, he rushed out and bought it first, so I had to come up with a new idea.
- \_\_\_ 25. Judging from the way Tina and Frank keep smiling and winking at one another, there seems to be a good deal of *spite* between them.

Score (Number correct) \_\_\_\_\_  $\times 4 =$  \_\_\_\_\_ %

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## UNIT FIVE: Test 3

### PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

- |                              |  |                                    |  |                        |
|------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--|------------------------|
| ___ 1. <b>assert</b>         | a) state as true                       | b) put limits on                   | c) give one's time                               | d) make more difficult |
| ___ 2. <b>commitment</b>     | a) location                            | b) promise                         | c) opinion                                       | d) difficulty          |
| ___ 3. <b>convince</b>       | a) persuade                            | b) differ                          | c) listen carefully                              | d) own                 |
| ___ 4. <b>decay</b>          | a) own                                 | b) look for                        | c) break down                                    | d) replace             |
| ___ 5. <b>evade</b>          | a) stand for                           | b) struggle                        | c) make clear                                    | d) avoid               |
| ___ 6. <b>fragment</b>       | a) unfriendly feeling                  | b) a snack                         | c) piece of a whole                              | d) true statement      |
| ___ 7. <b>fundamental</b>    | a) careless                            | b) bored                           | c) stiff   | d) basic               |
| ___ 8. <b>illustrate</b>     | a) replace                             | b) stand for                       | c) show through example                          | d) get                 |
| ___ 9. <b>impression</b>     | a) argument                            | b) piece                           | c) effort  | d) belief              |
| ___ 10. <b>nevertheless</b>  | a) even so                             | b) afterward                       | c) because                                       | d) even better         |
| ___ 11. <b>overwhelm</b>     | a) receive                             | b) overpower                       | c) understand                                    | d) come before         |
| ___ 12. <b>possess</b>       | a) lie about                           | b) own                             | c) differ  | d) show                |
| ___ 13. <b>precaution</b>    | a) something done to prevent a problem | b) something done to fix a problem | c) a problem                                     | d) a result            |
| ___ 14. <b>preconception</b> | a) truth                               | b) decision                        | c) opinion formed before knowing about something | d) area nearby         |
| ___ 15. <b>procedure</b>     | a) part of a whole                     | b) way of doing something          | c) reason  | d) goal                |
| ___ 16. <b>reform</b>        | a) make better                         | b) replace                         | c) learn about                                   | d) prevent             |
| ___ 17. <b>renew</b>         | a) mention again                       | b) make new again                  | c) ignore  | d) make clear          |
| ___ 18. <b>resemble</b>      | a) be ahead                            | b) be similar to                   | c) worry about                                   | d) improve             |
| ___ 19. <b>resent</b>        | a) replace                             | b) rot                             | c) feel angry at                                 | d) differ              |
| ___ 20. <b>resources</b>     | a) something missing                   | b) period of time                  | c) enough  | d) wealth of a country |
| ___ 21. <b>solemn</b>        | a) serious                             | b) noticeable                      | c) complete                                      | d) careless            |
| ___ 22. <b>symbolize</b>     | a) show                                | b) make use of                     | c) get larger                                    | d) stand for           |
| ___ 23. <b>tendency</b>      | a) anger                               | b) habit                           | c) tension                                       | d) belief              |
| ___ 24. <b>unanimous</b>     | a) in full agreement                   | b) quarreling                      | c) carefully done                                | d) basic               |
| ___ 25. <b>vicinity</b>      | a) neighborhood                        | b) wealth                          | c) promise                                       | d) opinion             |

(Continues on next page)

**PART B: Antonyms**

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

- |                           |                   |                     |                   |                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| ___ 26. <b>abolish</b>    | a) differ         | b) create           | c) give away      | d) ignore           |
| ___ 27. <b>acquire</b>    | a) make worse     | b) escape           | c) lose           | d) see              |
| ___ 28. <b>anxious</b>    | a) dishonest      | b) tired            | c) careless       | d) relaxed          |
| ___ 29. <b>clarify</b>    | a) include        | b) correct          | c) confuse        | d) grow strong      |
| ___ 30. <b>comprehend</b> | a) enjoy          | b) give away        | c) misunderstand  | d) remain the same  |
| ___ 31. <b>conflict</b>   | a) anger          | b) loss             | c) profit         | d) agreement        |
| ___ 32. <b>corrupt</b>    | a) useful         | b) honest           | c) loose          | d) careless         |
| ___ 33. <b>dramatic</b>   | a) not noticeable | b) brightly colored | c) careful        | d) careless         |
| ___ 34. <b>expand</b>     | a) agree          | b) confuse          | c) begin          | d) become smaller   |
| ___ 35. <b>extend</b>     | a) begin          | b) give away        | c) shorten        | d) make worse       |
| ___ 36. <b>flexible</b>   | a) flat           | b) stiff            | c) incomplete     | d) careless         |
| ___ 37. <b>formal</b>     | a) attractive     | b) not sincere      | c) casual         | d) troubled         |
| ___ 38. <b>frank</b>      | a) careless       | b) dishonest        | c) loose          | d) not enough       |
| ___ 39. <b>inferior</b>   | a) recent         | b) better           | c) far away       | d) serious          |
| ___ 40. <b>negligent</b>  | a) not enough     | b) lacking respect  | c) incorrect      | d) careful          |
| ___ 41. <b>precede</b>    | a) get smaller    | b) grow             | c) happen again   | d) come after       |
| ___ 42. <b>precise</b>    | a) not serious    | b) not complete     | c) not exact      | d) not common       |
| ___ 43. <b>rigid</b>      | a) dull           | b) rude             | c) bending        | d) correct          |
| ___ 44. <b>spite</b>      | a) reaction       | b) action           | c) growth         | d) friendly feeling |
| ___ 45. <b>stress</b>     | a) relaxation     | b) argument         | c) question       | d) idea             |
| ___ 46. <b>sufficient</b> | a) not enough     | b) not easy         | c) not true       | d) not basic        |
| ___ 47. <b>thorough</b>   | a) not proper     | b) harmful          | c) boring         | d) not complete     |
| ___ 48. <b>vary</b>       | a) confuse        | b) stay the same    | c) disappear      | d) make worse       |
| ___ 49. <b>vast</b>       | a) small          | b) changing         | c) unpleasant     | d) better           |
| ___ 50. <b>vertical</b>   | a) small          | b) better           | c) not interested | d) horizontal       |

<i>Score</i> (Number correct)    _____ $\times 2 =$ _____    %
--

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

## POSTTEST OF THE WHOLE BOOK

This test contains 100 items. In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the boldfaced word.

- \_\_\_ 1. To **determine** is to:           a) suspect   b) persuade   c) find out   d) compliment
- \_\_\_ 2. To **dispose of** is to:           a) repeat   b) ignore   c) keep   d) throw away
- \_\_\_ 3. Something that is **evident** is: a) hidden   b) obvious   c) musical   d) frightening
- \_\_\_ 4. To **preserve** is to:           a) pretend   b) expect   c) absorb   d) protect
- \_\_\_ 5. To **restore** is to:           a) destroy   b) repair   c) bury   d) lift up
- \_\_\_ 6. To **possess** is to:           a) plan   b) adjust   c) own   d) leave unchanged
- \_\_\_ 7. A **procedure** is a(n):       a) public   b) opinion   c) method   d) piece of property
- \_\_\_ 8. To **renew** is to:           a) find   b) attempt   c) force one's will upon   d) make active again
- \_\_\_ 9. **Resources** are:           a) agreements   b) supplies   c) responses   d) costs
- \_\_\_ 10. To be **sufficient** is to be:   a) less than is needed   b) humorous   c) enough   d) empty
- \_\_\_ 11. To **appeal** to is to:       a) repeat   b) say no   c) take away the outside part   d) make a request
- \_\_\_ 12. To **establish** is to:       a) flatten   b) knock down   c) start   d) repeat
- \_\_\_ 13. One's **potential** is one's:   a) ancestors   b) possibility   c) age   d) preference
- \_\_\_ 14. A **variety** is a(n):       a) opinion   b) delay   c) reason   d) mixture
- \_\_\_ 15. Something **wholesome** is:   a) foreign   b) disgusting   c) healthful   d) childlike
- \_\_\_ 16. To **assume** is to:           a) prove to be false   b) argue for   c) not care   d) suppose to be true
- \_\_\_ 17. To **exhaust** is to:       a) use up   b) remove from sight   c) refill   d) fall
- \_\_\_ 18. The **maximum** amount is:   a) the worst   b) the lightest   c) the most   d) the least
- \_\_\_ 19. An **objective** is a(n):       a) bad influence   b) reason to believe   c) goal   d) insult
- \_\_\_ 20. To **protest** is to:       a) test   b) encourage   c) prove   d) speak out against
- \_\_\_ 21. To **communicate** is to:   a) anger   b) hurry   c) inform   d) mistake
- \_\_\_ 22. If you **deceive**, you:       a) encourage   b) mislead   c) prevent   d) forbid
- \_\_\_ 23. An **earnest** person is:       a) sincere   b) wealthy   c) unpleasant   d) dishonest
- \_\_\_ 24. A story that is **fiction** is:   a) violent   b) exciting   c) made up   d) romantic
- \_\_\_ 25. A **theory** is a(n):       a) excuse   b) opportunity   c) certainty   d) unproven explanation

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_ 26. To be **current** is to be: a) good tasting b) few in number c) modern d) likable
- \_\_\_ 27. To **maintain** is to: a) release from captivity b) admire  
c) prove to be correct d) keep in existence
- \_\_\_ 28. A **minimum** number is: a) the smallest possible b) desirable c) the largest possible  
d) more than expected
- \_\_\_ 29. To **originate** is to: a) begin b) imitate c) impress d) pretend
- \_\_\_ 30. To be **reliable** is to be: a) untrustworthy b) dependable c) easily tricked d) healthy
- \_\_\_ 31. **Appropriate** actions are: a) rude b) impulsive c) proper d) unwise
- \_\_\_ 32. To **bewilder** is to: a) confuse b) calm c) accept d) explain
- \_\_\_ 33. **Emotion** is: a) eyesight b) feeling c) movement d) payment
- \_\_\_ 34. To **investigate** is to: a) examine b) make secure c) abandon d) insist
- \_\_\_ 35. To be **legible** is to be: a) heavy b) noisy c) empty d) clear
- \_\_\_ 36. To **analyze** is to: a) disturb b) get rid of (something) c) examine d) dislike
- \_\_\_ 37. A **category** is a(n): a) denial b) means of expression c) lack of understanding  
d) group of similar things
- \_\_\_ 38. One who is **critical** is: a) well-liked b) lacking intelligence  
c) not taking sides in a quarrel d) disapproving
- \_\_\_ 39. A **deliberate** act is: a) amazing b) unwise c) done on purpose d) criminal
- \_\_\_ 40. **Frustration** is: a) discouragement b) great delight c) cruelty d) luck
- \_\_\_ 41. If you are **anxious**, you are: a) sleepy b) worried c) busy d) young
- \_\_\_ 42. To **convince** is to: a) disregard b) refuse to accept c) cause to believe d) clean up
- \_\_\_ 43. An **inferior** product is: a) poor in quality b) highly valued c) heavy  
d) unbreakable
- \_\_\_ 44. To **overwhelm** is to: a) dissolve b) make helpless c) understand d) make whole
- \_\_\_ 45. A **thorough** job is: a) forgotten b) wasted c) carefully done d) well-paying
- \_\_\_ 46. To be **conscious** is to be: a) drowsy b) purposeful c) depressed d) awake
- \_\_\_ 47. Something **external** is: a) buried deeply b) helpful c) unimportant d) on the outside
- \_\_\_ 48. To be **incredible** is to be: a) humble b) showy c) unbelievable d) wasteful
- \_\_\_ 49. **Internal** means: a) understood by few b) uncommon c) easy d) inner
- \_\_\_ 50. A **remedy** is a(n): a) source of amusement b) usual manner of doing something  
c) cure d) collection of writings

(Continues on next page)

- \_\_\_ 51. Something **artificial** is: a) not natural b) impressive c) natural d) worn out
- \_\_\_ 52. **Frequency** means: a) where something comes from b) how fast something is  
c) how loud something is d) how often something happens
- \_\_\_ 53. To **represent** is to: a) avoid talking about b) be a symbol of c) prefer  
d) allow to happen
- \_\_\_ 54. Something **temporary** is: a) serving for a limited time b) impossible to achieve  
c) expected to last forever d) clearly seen
- \_\_\_ 55. A **triumph** is a: a) compromise b) defeat c) victory d) battle
- \_\_\_ 56. To **coincide** is to: a) remove from consideration b) read carefully  
c) make clear d) happen at the same time
- \_\_\_ 57. A **considerable** size is: a) rather small b) too small c) rather large d) too large
- \_\_\_ 58. An **intentional** act is: a) accidental b) on purpose c) misguided d) against the law
- \_\_\_ 59. To be **unstable** is to be: a) unsteady b) strong c) usual d) complete
- \_\_\_ 60. To **utilize** is to: a) suggest b) control by force c) make use of d) accept as fact
- \_\_\_ 61. A **burden** is a(n): a) joy b) hardship c) reply d) payment
- \_\_\_ 62. To be **economical** is to be: a) wasteful b) rich c) forgiving d) thrifty
- \_\_\_ 63. An **extravagant** person is: a) critical b) messy c) wise d) wasteful
- \_\_\_ 64. **Security** is: a) loneliness b) protection c) immaturity d) ridicule
- \_\_\_ 65. To **sympathize** is to: a) avoid b) object c) refuse d) share feeling
- \_\_\_ 66. A **conflict** is a(n): a) period of time b) disagreement c) lesson d) point of view
- \_\_\_ 67. **Stress** is: a) excitement b) relaxation c) enjoyment d) tension
- \_\_\_ 68. A **unanimous** decision is: a) based on complete agreement b) mixed c) poorly thought out  
d) mistaken
- \_\_\_ 69. To **vary** is to: a) insist b) change c) remain the same d) recognize
- \_\_\_ 70. A **vicinity** is a(n): a) heated argument b) type of lamp c) written pamphlet  
d) area around a place
- \_\_\_ 71. To be **accustomed to** is to be: a) unused to b) unable to c) in the habit of d) angry at
- \_\_\_ 72. To **misinterpret** is to: a) have respect b) prefer c) get rid of d) understand incorrectly
- \_\_\_ 73. To **occur** is to: a) disappear b) happen c) respond d) repeat
- \_\_\_ 74. When you **revise**, you: a) copy without giving credit b) discard c) correct and improve  
d) fail to complete
- \_\_\_ 75. A **version** is a: a) deliberately mean remark b) poem c) hatred  
d) report based on one point of view

*(Continues on next page)*

- \_\_\_ 76. Something **apparent** is: a) made up of many small parts b) obvious  
c) impossible to see with the naked eye d) hard to understand
- \_\_\_ 77. If something is **automatic**, it: a) is easily moved b) improves over time c) cannot change  
d) operates by itself
- \_\_\_ 78. To **fulfill** is to: a) carry out b) fail at a task c) understand another's feelings  
d) give advice
- \_\_\_ 79. To **influence** is to: a) misunderstand b) be offended c) persuade d) excuse
- \_\_\_ 80. To **transfer** is to: a) inspect b) discontinue c) find fault  
d) send from one place to another
- \_\_\_ 81. To **complicate** is to: a) smooth over b) adjust c) recognize d) make difficult
- \_\_\_ 82. A **conscience** is a(n): a) sense of being awake b) sense of right and wrong  
c) inability to decide d) skill with numbers
- \_\_\_ 83. To **counsel** is to: a) improve b) give advice c) approve d) meet
- \_\_\_ 84. To **detect** is to: a) get b) complain c) notice d) remark
- \_\_\_ 85. To be **transparent** is to be: a) seen through easily b) dark in color c) sent away d) unusual
- \_\_\_ 86. An **attitude** is a: a) decrease b) frame of mind c) success d) height
- \_\_\_ 87. A **contrast** is a: a) bright color b) similarity c) suggestion d) striking difference
- \_\_\_ 88. To be **frank** is to be: a) honest b) youthful c) untruthful d) painful
- \_\_\_ 89. A **fragile** object is: a) expensive b) tasteless c) richly decorated d) easily broken
- \_\_\_ 90. An **impression** is a(n): a) lie b) opinion c) iron d) center (of something)
- \_\_\_ 91. An **emphasis** is a(n): a) refusal to speak b) betrayal c) stubborn act  
d) importance given to something
- \_\_\_ 92. To **interpret** is to: a) confuse b) make an effort c) explain d) light from within
- \_\_\_ 93. To **propose** is to: a) suggest b) persuade c) exaggerate d) leave out
- \_\_\_ 94. An **ultimate** experience is: a) common b) inefficient c) the greatest d) dangerous
- \_\_\_ 95. To be **vague** is to be: a) shining b) unclear c) in fashion d) embarrassing
- \_\_\_ 96. To **comprehend** is to: a) dislike b) understand c) protect d) repeat
- \_\_\_ 97. Something **dramatic** is: a) odd b) hard to notice c) impressive d) boring
- \_\_\_ 98. To be **excessive** is to be: a) too much b) slow to anger c) not enough d) kindly
- \_\_\_ 99. To **illustrate** is to: a) destroy b) give an example c) repair d) send off
- \_\_\_ 100. To **indicate** is to: a) point out b) fail to see c) go in d) pay attention to

**STOP.** This is the end of the test. If there is time remaining, you may go back and recheck your answers. When the time is up, hand in both your answer sheet and this test booklet to your instructor.

# *Appendixes*





# ***A Answer Key***

---

## ***1. Answers to the Pretest of the Whole Book***

1. b	2. a	3. d	4. a
5. b	6. b	7. a	8. c
9. b	10. a	11. a	12. a
13. c	14. b	15. a	16. d
17. a	18. b	19. a	20. d
21. a	22. c	23. b	24. d
25. a	26. d	27. a	28. b
29. c	30. a	31. a	32. b
33. c	34. b	35. c	36. b
37. b	38. a	39. a	40. d
41. d	42. b	43. a	44. c
45. b	46. d	47. a	48. b
49. a	50. b	51. b	52. c
53. d	54. a	55. a	56. d
57. a	58. c	59. a	60. b
61. a	62. c	63. b	64. a
65. a	66. b	67. d	68. a
69. c	70. b	71. c	72. a
73. c	74. c	75. a	76. c
77. a	78. d	79. b	80. d
81. c	82. d	83. b	84. d
85. a	86. c	87. b	88. a
89. d	90. c	91. c	92. c
93. c	94. d	95. c	96. d
97. a	98. c	99. a	100. c

## ***2. Answers to the Unit Pretests***

<b>Unit One</b>	<b>Unit Two</b>	<b>Unit Three</b>	<b>Unit Four</b>	<b>Unit Five</b>
<i>Pretest</i>	<i>Pretest</i>	<i>Pretest</i>	<i>Pretest</i>	<i>Pretest</i>
1. b	1. a	1. a	1. c	1. d
2. b	2. a	2. b	2. b	2. d
3. c	3. b	3. c	3. a	3. a
4. d	4. d	4. b	4. c	4. b
5. d	5. b	5. a	5. b	5. a
6. a	6. c	6. a	6. a	6. a
7. b	7. b	7. b	7. d	7. d
8. a	8. b	8. d	8. a	8. c
9. c	9. a	9. a	9. a	9. a
10. a	10. c	10. d	10. c	10. b
11. d	11. a	11. c	11. d	11. c
12. c	12. b	12. c	12. b	12. b
13. a	13. d	13. c	13. b	13. a
14. a	14. b	14. c	14. a	14. d
15. b	15. a	15. d	15. d	15. c
16. a	16. c	16. a	16. a	16. d
17. d	17. c	17. c	17. a	17. a
18. b	18. b	18. c	18. c	18. c
19. b	19. d	19. c	19. b	19. b
20. d	20. a	20. a	20. b	20. c
21. d	21. a	21. a	21. d	21. a
22. a	22. a	22. d	22. c	22. b
23. b	23. c	23. d	23. d	23. c
24. a	24. a	24. b	24. b	24. a
25. c	25. a	25. c	25. a	25. d
26. b	26. c	26. d	26. b	26. d
27. b	27. c	27. c	27. a	27. a
28. d	28. b	28. a	28. b	28. b
29. a	29. b	29. b	29. c	29. b
30. c	30. a	30. b	30. d	30. b
31. d	31. d	31. c	31. a	31. d
32. c	32. a	32. b	32. d	32. d
33. a	33. b	33. c	33. b	33. a
34. a	34. c	34. c	34. c	34. a
35. c	35. c	35. a	35. b	35. c
36. d	36. d	36. b	36. a	36. a
37. a	37. b	37. a	37. d	37. c
38. d	38. a	38. d	38. a	38. b
39. b	39. d	39. c	39. d	39. c
40. c	40. a	40. d	40. a	40. a
41. d	41. b	41. a	41. d	41. d
42. c	42. a	42. b	42. a	42. a
43. b	43. d	43. d	43. c	43. a
44. d	44. c	44. c	44. b	44. d
45. a	45. c	45. c	45. c	45. a
46. a	46. d	46. a	46. b	46. d
47. c	47. a	47. d	47. a	47. b
48. b	48. a	48. b	48. a	48. c
49. c	49. c	49. c	49. d	49. a
50. b	50. a	50. b	50. c	50. d

### 3. Answers to the Chapter Activities

#### Chapter 1 (Johnny Appleseed; The Lovable Leech?)

Ten Words in Context	Matching Words with Definitions	Sentence Check 1	Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies	Final Check
1. c 6. c	1. 3 6. 1	1. j 6. g	1-2. e, g	1. d 6. h	1. c 6. g	1. b 6. g
2. a 7. c	2. 6 7. 7	2. c 7. f	3-4. j, f	2. a 7. j	2. b 7. i	2. d 7. i
3. c 8. a	3. 2 8. 10	3. e 8. a	5-6. h, b	3. b 8. f	3. d 8. j	3. a 8. f
4. b 9. b	4. 9 9. 8	4. i 9. h	7-8. c, a	4. c 9. g	4. e 9. h	4. c 9. h
5. a 10. c	5. 4 10. 5	5. d 10. b	9-10. d, i	5. e 10. i	5. a 10. f	5. e 10. j

#### Chapter 2 (Finding Fault — And What to Do About It; What Do Your Hobbies Reveal About You?)

Ten Words in Context	Matching Words with Definitions	Sentence Check 1	Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies	Final Check
1. b 6. c	1. 9 6. 4	1. i 6. h	1-2. d, c	1. e 6. i	1. b 6. d	1. c 6. g
2. c 7. a	2. 2 7. 5	2. f 7. c	3-4. b, e	2. c 7. f	2. b 7. a	2. d 7. h
3. c 8. c	3. 3 8. 8	3. g 8. a	5-6. f, h	3. d 8. g	3. a 8. b	3. e 8. i
4. c 9. b	4. 7 9. 1	4. j 9. e	7-8. i, g	4. a 9. j	4. d 9. b	4. b 9. f
5. a 10. b	5. 6 10. 10	5. b 10. d	9-10. a, j	5. b 10. h	5. c 10. c	5. a 10. j

#### Chapter 3 (Fixing Up Furniture; Barbara's Date with Her Cousin)

Ten Words in Context	Matching Words with Definitions	Sentence Check 1	Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies	Final Check
1. c 6. a	1. 5 6. 9	1. b 6. h	1-2. e, f	1. c 6. g	1. b 6. j	1. b 6. g
2. b 7. b	2. 3 7. 6	2. e 7. f	3-4. j, g	2. a 7. j	2. e 7. i	2. e 7. j
3. c 8. b	3. 4 8. 8	3. a 8. c	5-6. b, c	3. d 8. f	3. d 8. f	3. a 8. h
4. a 9. a	4. 2 9. 7	4. j 9. g	7-8. i, d	4. e 9. i	4. c 9. g	4. c 9. i
5. b 10. c	5. 10 10. 1	5. d 10. i	9-10. a, h	5. b 10. h	5. a 10. h	5. d 10. f

#### Chapter 4 (The Vacuum-Cleaner Salesman; Peace at Last)

Ten Words in Context	Matching Words with Definitions	Sentence Check 1	Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies	Final Check
1. b 6. a	1. 8 6. 9	1. j 6. c	1-2. e, i	1. b 6. i	1. d 6. a	1. b 6. g
2. a 7. b	2. 1 7. 5	2. b 7. d	3-4. j, c	2. d 7. g	2. b 7. d	2. d 7. i
3. a 8. b	3. 3 8. 2	3. g 8. f	5-6. a, g	3. c 8. j	3. a 8. c	3. a 8. h
4. c 9. b	4. 7 9. 10	4. a 9. h	7-8. d, f	4. a 9. h	4. a 9. b	4. e 9. f
5. b 10. c	5. 6 10. 4	5. i 10. e	9-10. h, b	5. e 10. f	5. c 10. b	5. c 10. j

#### Chapter 5 (Study Skills to the Rescue!; How to Control Children)

Ten Words in Context	Matching Words with Definitions	Sentence Check 1	Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies	Final Check
1. b 6. b	1. 8 6. 5	1. i 6. f	1-2. a, b	1. e 6. i	1. a 6. b	1. b 6. g
2. c 7. b	2. 2 7. 3	2. j 7. c	3-4. i, g	2. d 7. h	2. c 7. a	2. a 7. i
3. a 8. c	3. 9 8. 4	3. a 8. g	5-6. d, h	3. a 8. f	3. d 8. d	3. e 8. h
4. c 9. a	4. 6 9. 7	4. d 9. e	7-8. j, e	4. c 9. j	4. c 9. d	4. c 9. f
5. c 10. c	5. 1 10. 10	5. h 10. b	9-10. c, f	5. b 10. g	5. d 10. a	5. d 10. j

#### Chapter 6 (Toasters; A Mean Man)

Ten Words in Context	Matching Words with Definitions	Sentence Check 1	Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies	Final Check
1. b 6. c	1. 7 6. 2	1. j 6. b	1-2. i, c	1. d 6. h	1. d 6. h	1. d 6. i
2. a 7. c	2. 4 7. 8	2. a 7. c	3-4. f, j	2. a 7. g	2. c 7. g	2. e 7. g
3. a 8. b	3. 3 8. 9	3. f 8. d	5-6. g, e	3. b 8. i	3. b 8. j	3. e 8. h
4. b 9. c	4. 6 9. 1	4. i 9. g	7-8. b, a	4. c 9. j	4. e 9. f	4. a 9. f
5. a 10. b	5. 5 10. 10	5. h 10. e	9-10. h, d	5. e 10. f	5. a 10. i	5. c 10. j

#### Chapter 7 (A Special Memory; Watch Your Manners!)

Ten Words in Context	Matching Words with Definitions	Sentence Check 1	Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies	Final Check
1. c 6. c	1. 9 6. 8	1. g 6. a	1-2. a, b	1. e 6. j	1. c 6. a	1. b 6. g
2. c 7. c	2. 7 7. 3	2. c 7. f	3-4. e, g	2. a 7. h	2. d 7. b	2. d 7. h
3. b 8. c	3. 6 8. 10	3. j 8. d	5-6. j, i	3. b 8. i	3. d 8. d	3. c 8. f
4. a 9. c	4. 4 9. 2	4. b 9. i	7-8. c, d	4. d 9. f	4. a 9. c	4. a 9. j
5. a 10. b	5. 5 10. 1	5. h 10. e	9-10. f, h	5. c 10. g	5. b 10. a	5. e 10. i

**Chapter 8 (Big Brothers and Sisters; Kevin's First Date)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. a 6. c	1. 5 6. 1	1. f 6. a	1-2. e, j	1. b 6. h	1. c 6. g	1. a 6. f
2. c 7. a	2. 2 7. 4	2. h 7. e	3-4. i, a	2. d 7. f	2. d 7. j	2. b 7. i
3. b 8. c	3. 9 8. 8	3. i 8. d	5-6. b, f	3. c 8. i	3. b 8. f	3. e 8. h
4. b 9. a	4. 10 9. 3	4. b 9. g	7-8. h, g	4. a 9. g	4. a 9. h	4. d 9. g
5. c 10. c	5. 7 10. 6	5. j 10. c	9-10. d, c	5. e 10. j	5. e 10. i	5. c 10. j

**Chapter 9 (Differences in a Gym Program; Teaching A Lesson)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. a	1. 10 6. 4	1. b 6. g	1-2. j, e	1. b 6. d	1. d 6. b	1. a 6. g
2. a 7. c	2. 7 7. 5	2. i 7. c	3-4. b, h	2. a 7. b	2. c 7. c	2. e 7. h
3. b 8. c	3. 2 8. 3	3. h 8. e	5-6. i, c	3. d 8. a	3. d 8. d	3. b 8. f
4. c 9. a	4. 8 9. 6	4. j 9. d	7-8. d, f	4. c 9. c	4. a 9. a	4. c 9. j
5. c 10. a	5. 1 10. 9	5. f 10. a	9-10. g, a	5. e 10. e	5. a 10. b	5. d 10. i

**Chapter 10 (Knowing How to Argue; A Change of School, A Change of Heart)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. c	1. 1 6. 2	1. c 6. i	1-2. a, e	1. d 6. j	1. a 6. b	1. b 6. g
2. c 7. b	2. 7 7. 5	2. b 7. d	3-4. b, c	2. b 7. h	2. c 7. d	2. d 7. i
3. b 8. b	3. 9 8. 10	3. f 8. a	5-6. i, j	3. c 8. i	3. c 8. d	3. a 8. f
4. a 9. c	4. 3 9. 6	4. g 9. e	7-8. d, f	4. a 9. f	4. d 9. a	4. e 9. h
5. c 10. a	5. 4 10. 8	5. j 10. h	9-10. g, h	5. e 10. g	5. b 10. b	5. c 10. j

**Chapter 11 (Coming Out of a Coma; The Office Doughnut Contest)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. a	1. 10 6. 8	1. f 6. b	1-2. i, c	1. d 6. f	1. d 6. h	1. a 6. f
2. b 7. a	2. 5 7. 1	2. d 7. h	3-4. d, f	2. a 7. j	2. c 7. g	2. c 7. h
3. c 8. b	3. 2 8. 3	3. g 8. i	5-6. e, j	3. b 8. g	3. a 8. f	3. b 8. g
4. c 9. c	4. 4 9. 6	4. j 9. a	7-8. a, b	4. c 9. h	4. b 9. i	4. d 9. i
5. b 10. b	5. 9 10. 7	5. e 10. c	9-10. h, g	5. e 10. i	5. e 10. j	5. e 10. j

**Chapter 12 (The People's Choice; The Christmas Wars)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. b 5. a	1. 9 6. 3	1. j 6. c	1-2. f, d	1. b 6. j	1. c 6. c	1. e 6. f
2. a 6. c	2. 4 7. 7	2. a 7. h	3-4. c, a	2. a 7. f	2. c 7. b	2. c 7. i
3. c 7. b	3. 6 8. 2	3. d 8. g	5-6. j, h	3. e 8. g	3. d 8. d	3. b 8. g
4. c 8. a	4. 5 9. 8	4. f 9. i	7-8. i, e	4. d 9. i	4. a 9. a	4. d 9. j
5. b 10. c	5. 10 10. 1	5. b 10. e	9-10. g, b	5. c 10. h	5. c 10. b	5. a 10. h

**Chapter 13 (What's Your Type?; What a Circus!)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. c	1. 9 6. 2	1. j 6. h	1-2. i, h	1. e 6. h	1. b 6. j	1. e 6. j
2. a 7. a	2. 8 7. 4	2. a 7. c	3-4. e, f	2. b 7. f	2. c 7. g	2. c 7. i
3. a 8. b	3. 1 8. 6	3. f 8. d	5-6. d, a	3. a 8. j	3. e 8. i	3. d 8. g
4. c 9. a	4. 10 9. 5	4. i 9. g	7-8. c, b	4. d 9. g	4. d 9. h	4. b 9. f
5. b 10. c	5. 3 10. 7	5. b 10. e	9-10. j, g	5. c 10. i	5. a 10. f	5. a 10. h

**Chapter 14 (Practicing Kindness; The Stinking Rose)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. b	1. 9 6. 10	1. b 6. c	1-2. g, c	1. e 6. g	1. b 6. b	1. d 6. h
2. a 7. c	2. 1 7. 7	2. i 7. f	3-4. a, i	2. c 7. h	2. a 7. d	2. e 7. f
3. c 8. a	3. 8 8. 5	3. d 8. j	5-6. d, e	3. a 8. i	3. c 8. a	3. c 8. g
4. b 9. b	4. 4 9. 2	4. e 9. g	7-8. f, h	4. d 9. j	4. d 9. h	4. a 9. j
5. a 10. a	5. 3 10. 6	5. h 10. a	9-10. j, b	5. b 10. f	5. b 10. d	5. b 10. i

**Chapter 15 (A Modern Fairy Tale; Wolf Children)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. a	1. 9 6. 7	1. i 6. j	1-2. b, a	1. d 6. g	1. b 6. c	1. d 6. f
2. a 7. b	2. 4 7. 8	2. a 7. h	3-4. d, e	2. a 7. h	2. c 7. d	2. a 7. h
3. a 8. c	3. 10 8. 2	3. g 8. d	5-6. g, j	3. b 8. i	3. c 8. a	3. c 8. i
4. b 9. b	4. 5 9. 3	4. c 9. f	7-8. f, h	4. c 9. f	4. c 9. b	4. b 9. g
5. c 10. a	5. 6 10. 1	5. e 10. b	9-10. c, i	5. e 10. j	5. d 10. b	5. e 10. j

**Chapter 16 (A Mismatched Couple; A Campaign to Become Class President)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. b 6. b	1. 4 6. 6	1. j 6. a	1-2. j, i	1. d 6. g	1. a 6. f	1. b 6. i
2. a 7. c	2. 10 7. 3	2. c 7. f	3-4. b, h	2. b 7. f	2. d 7. j	2. c 7. g
3. c 8. c	3. 2 8. 1	3. g 8. h	5-6. d, f	3. e 8. h	3. c 8. i	3. a 8. j
4. b 9. a	4. 7 9. 8	4. e 9. d	7-8. a, c	4. a 9. i	4. b 9. h	4. d 9. f
5. c 10. b	5. 9 10. 5	5. i 10. b	9-10. g, e	5. c 10. j	5. e 10. g	5. e 10. h

**Chapter 17 (The Famous Detective; Why So Quiet?)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. a	1. 3 6. 9	1. a 6. h	1-2. g, h	1. b 6. h	1. d 6. b	1. c 6. h
2. b 7. b	2. 2 7. 7	2. d 7. i	3-4. j, i	2. c 7. f	2. b 7. c	2. a 7. f
3. b 8. a	3. 5 8. 1	3. c 8. e	5-6. c, b	3. d 8. i	3. a 8. a	3. b 8. j
4. c 9. b	4. 6 9. 4	4. b 9. g	7-8. e, d	4. e 9. j	4. c 9. d	4. d 9. g
5. c 10. b	5. 10 10. 8	5. j 10. f	9-10. f, a	5. a 10. g	5. c 10. d	5. e 10. i

**Chapter 18 (Fear of Speaking; Do You Believe in Magic?)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. a	1. 1 6. 9	1. f 6. b	1-2. f, g	1. d 6. g	1. d 6. h	1. e 6. h
2. b 7. a	2. 10 7. 7	2. c 7. h	3-4. h, c	2. b 7. h	2. b 7. i	2. b 7. f
3. b 8. c	3. 6 8. 4	3. a 8. e	5-6. b, a	3. a 8. f	3. a 8. f	3. c 8. j
4. c 9. b	4. 2 9. 3	4. i 9. j	7-8. d, i	4. e 9. i	4. c 9. g	4. a 9. i
5. b 10. a	5. 5 10. 8	5. g 10. d	9-10. e, j	5. c 10. j	5. e 10. j	5. d 10. g

**Chapter 19 (The Miracle Runner; One of Those Days)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. a	1. 9 6. 2	1. b 6. a	1-2. c, a	1. d 6. h	1. a 6. b	1. e 6. j
2. c 7. a	2. 8 7. 7	2. i 7. d	3-4. f, g	2. a 7. f	2. a 7. a	2. c 7. i
3. a 8. c	3. 1 8. 5	3. g 8. c	5-6. j, b	3. c 8. g	3. d 8. c	3. d 8. g
4. b 9. c	4. 4 9. 3	4. j 9. f	7-8. i, d	4. b 9. j	4. c 9. d	4. a 9. f
5. b 10. c	5. 6 10. 10	5. h 10. e	9-10. h, e	5. e 10. i	5. d 10. b	5. b 10. h

**Chapter 20 (Pregnancy and Alcohol; A Criminal with a Tail)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. b 6. a	1. 8 6. 5	1. e 6. f	1-2. i, h	1. b 6. h	1. d 6. a	1. c 6. j
2. a 7. b	2. 2 7. 6	2. h 7. g	3-4. j, c	2. e 7. i	2. b 7. d	2. a 7. i
3. c 8. a	3. 1 8. 10	3. c 8. b	5-6. b, e	3. d 8. g	3. a 8. b	3. e 8. f
4. a 9. b	4. 3 9. 9	4. d 9. i	7-8. g, d	4. a 9. f	4. c 9. b	4. d 9. h
5. c 10. b	5. 7 10. 4	5. j 10. a	9-10. a, f	5. c 10. j	5. d 10. d	5. b 10. g

**Chapter 21 (Traveling with Children; Saving Earth's Natural Supplies)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. a 6. b	1. 5 6. 6	1. e 6. i	1-2. a, f	1. d 6. h	1. e 6. h	1. e 6. i
2. a 7. c	2. 4 7. 9	2. h 7. c	3-4. j, c	2. c 7. f	2. a 7. g	2. a 7. h
3. b 8. a	3. 10 8. 7	3. a 8. g	5-6. g, h	3. b 8. g	3. d 8. j	3. d 8. f
4. c 9. b	4. 1 9. 2	4. j 9. d	7-8. b, d	4. e 9. j	4. c 9. i	4. c 9. j
5. c 10. c	5. 8 10. 3	5. b 10. f	9-10. e, i	5. a 10. i	5. b 10. f	5. b 10. g

**Chapter 22 (More Fat, Anyone?; Is Prison Effective?)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn- Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. b 6. c	1. 4 6. 1	1. g 6. j	1–2. i, f	1. c 6. h	1. a 6. c	1. c 6. i
2. a 7. a	2. 3 7. 7	2. f 7. b	3–4. h, a	2. b 7. f	2. b 7. a	2. e 7. j
3. c 8. b	3. 6 8. 9	3. c 8. h	5–6. j, c	3. e 8. g	3. d 8. d	3. a 8. g
4. c 9. c	4. 2 9. 10	4. d 9. i	7–8. b, d	4. d 9. i	4. d 9. b	4. d 9. f
5. a 10. c	5. 8 10. 5	5. e 10. a	9–10. e, g	5. a 10. j	5. c 10. d	5. b 10. h

**Chapter 23 (She Changed My Mind; So Sue Me)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn- Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. c 6. c	1. 7 6. 1	1. b 6. g	1–2. e, f	1. d 6. g	1. c 6. h	1. c 6. h
2. a 7. b	2. 8 7. 3	2. a 7. h	3–4. h, g	2. c 7. f	2. a 7. j	2. e 7. i
3. b 8. b	3. 2 8. 10	3. i 8. e	5–6. b, c	3. a 8. j	3. b 8. g	3. b 8. f
4. a 9. c	4. 6 9. 9	4. c 9. f	7–8. a, d	4. b 9. h	4. d 9. i	4. d 9. j
5. b 10. c	5. 5 10. 4	5. d 10. j	9–10. i, j	5. e 10. i	5. e 10. f	5. a 10. g

**Chapter 24 (Fear of Public Speaking; Mrs. Thornton's Condition)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn- Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. b 6. a	1. 5 6. 1	1. b 6. a	1–2. d, g	1. d 6. h	1. c 6. a	1. a 6. i
2. c 7. c	2. 8 7. 4	2. h 7. d	3–4. a, b	2. a 7. i	2. b 7. d	2. e 7. g
3. b 8. b	3. 10 8. 7	3. g 8. e	5–6. e, f	3. c 8. f	3. c 8. d	3. c 8. j
4. c 9. b	4. 2 9. 3	4. i 9. c	7–8. c, h	4. b 9. g	4. a 9. c	4. d 9. f
5. b 10. b	5. 6 10. 9	5. j 10. f	9–10. i, j	5. e 10. j	5. c 10. d	5. b 10. h

**Chapter 25 (Wacky Weddings; The Cost of Hatred)**

<i>Ten Words in Context</i>	<i>Matching Words with Definitions</i>	<i>Sentence Check 1</i>	<i>Sentence Check 2</i>	<i>Related Words</i>	<i>Word Parts/Syn- Ant/Analogies</i>	<i>Final Check</i>
1. b 6. a	1. 3 6. 7	1. d 6. g	1–2. a, j	1. b 6. h	1. b 6. a	1. c 6. j
2. a 7. a	2. 2 7. 9	2. b 7. f	3–4. h, b	2. c 7. g	2. d 7. c	2. b 7. h
3. b 8. c	3. 1 8. 10	3. c 8. h	5–6. f, c	3. d 8. f	3. a 8. d	3. d 8. f
4. c 9. b	4. 5 9. 8	4. a 9. e	7–8. i, d	4. e 9. j	4. d 9. b	4. a 9. g
5. c 10. b	5. 4 10. 6	5. i 10. j	9–10. g, e	5. a 10. i	5. d 10. b	5. e 10. i

#### ***4. Answers to the Posttest of the Whole Book***

1. c	2. d	3. b	4. d
5. b	6. c	7. c	8. d
9. b	10. c	11. d	12. c
13. b	14. d	15. c	16. d
17. a	18. c	19. c	20. d
21. c	22. b	23. a	24. c
25. d	26. c	27. d	28. a
29. a	30. b	31. c	32. a
33. b	34. a	35. d	36. c
37. d	38. d	39. c	40. a
41. b	42. c	43. a	44. b
45. c	46. d	47. d	48. c
49. d	50. c	51. a	52. d
53. b	54. a	55. c	56. d
57. c	58. b	59. a	60. c
61. b	62. d	63. d	64. b
65. d	66. b	67. d	68. a
69. b	70. d	71. c	72. d
73. b	74. c	75. d	76. b
77. d	78. a	79. c	80. d
81. d	82. b	83. b	84. c
85. a	86. b	87. d	88. a
89. d	90. b	91. d	92. c
93. a	94. c	95. b	96. b
97. c	98. a	99. b	100. a

# B Word List

abandon *v.* 放弃  
abolish *v.* 废止, 彻底废除(法律、制度、习俗等)  
abrupt *a.* 突然的, 意外的  
abundant *a.* 大量的, 多的, 充足的  
accompany *v.* 陪伴, 陪同  
accustomed *a.* 习惯的, 适应了的  
acquire *v.* (尤指通过努力)取得, 获得; 学到  
adequate *a.* 适当的, 胜任的  
advise *v.* 劝告, 忠告, 向...提供意见  
aggravate *v.* 加重, 加剧; 使恶化  
alert *a.* 警觉的, 警惕的  
analyze *v.* 细察, 分析  
anticipate *v.* 预期, 预料  
anxious *a.* 焦虑的, 发愁的  
apparent *a.* 清晰可见的  
appeal *v.* 呼吁, 吁请, 恳求  
appropriate *a.* 适合的, 恰当的, 相称的  
approximately *adv.* 大约, 大概  
artificial *a.* 人工的, 人造的, 人为的  
assert *v.* 肯定地说出, 坚定地断言  
assume *v.* 假定, 假设, 想当然地认为  
assure *v.* 深信不疑地对...说, 向...保证  
astonish *v.* 使惊讶  
attitude *n.* 态度, 看法  
authentic *a.* 真的, 真正的, 逼真的  
automatic *a.* 自动的, 以自动装置完成的  
awkward *a.* (动作、形态等)不雅观的, 难看的  
betray *v.* 背叛, 出卖  
bewilder *v.* 使迷惑, 使糊涂  
brutal *a.* 严酷的, 苛刻的  
burden *n.* 重担, 精神负担  
category *n.* 种类, 类, 类别  
cease *v.* 停止, 终止  
challenge *n.* 挑战  
characteristic *a.* 典型的, 表示特性的  
circumstances *n.* 情况, 事态, 情势, 形势  
clarify *v.* 澄清, 阐明, 使清晰明了  
classify *v.* 把...分类

coincide *v.* 同时发生  
commitment *n.* 承诺, 许诺, 保证  
communicate *v.* 传达; 传递; 交流  
comparison *n.* 比较, 对照  
complex *a.* 复杂的, 错综的; 难懂的  
complicate *v.* 使复杂化  
comprehend *v.* 理解, 懂; 领会  
concept *n.* 概念, 观点, 思想  
conflict *n.* 冲突, 战斗  
confront *v.* 使面对, 使面临, 使遇到  
conscience *n.* 良心, 道德心  
conscious *a.* 意识到的, 自觉的; 感到的  
consent *v.* 同意, 赞同, 准许  
considerable *v.* 相当大(或多)的  
consistent *a.* 坚持的, 固守的, 一贯的  
contrast *n.* (对比之下显出的)悬殊差别; 比差(程度)  
convince *v.* 使确信, 使信服; 说服  
cope *v.* 对付, 应付  
corrupt *a.* 堕落的, 邪恶的, 不道德的  
counsel *v.* 劝告, 提议  
critical *a.* 吹毛求疵的, 爱挑剔的  
crucial *a.* 决定性的, 关键性的  
current *a.* 通行的, 通用的, 流行的  
customary *a.* 习惯上的, 惯常的  
decay *v.* 腐烂, 腐朽, 腐败  
deceive *v.* 欺骗, 诓骗; 蒙蔽  
deliberate *a.* 故意的, 蓄意的  
demonstrate *v.* 示范操作(产品)  
dependent *a.* 依靠的, 依赖的  
deprive *v.* 使不能享受; 使不能做  
desperate *a.* 孤注一掷的, 拼死的  
detect *v.* 查明, 察觉, 发现  
determine *v.* 确定, 查明, 测定  
detract *v.* 减损, 诋毁  
devote *v.* 将...献(给), 奉献(to)  
discipline *v.* 惩罚, 处罚  
dispose of *v.* 去掉, 丢掉, 清除, 销毁  
dispute *n.* 争论, 辩论

disregard *v.* 不理睬, 不顾  
disrupt *v.* 扰乱, 使中断  
distinct *a.* 明显的, 清楚的, 清晰的  
distract *v.* 转移(注意力); 使分心  
dominate *v.* 支配, 统治, 控制  
dramatic *a.* 引人注目的; 给人深刻印象的  
eager *a.* 热切的, 渴望的  
earnest *a.* 重要的, 庄重的  
economical *a.* 经济的, 节约的, 省俭的  
eligible *a.* 有资格当选的, 有条件被选中的  
eliminate *v.* 排除, 消除  
emotion *n.* 情感, 情绪; 感情  
emphasis *n.* 重点, 重要性  
endure *v.* 忍耐, 忍受  
establish *v.* 建立; 建造; 设立  
evade *v.* 逃脱, 躲开  
evaluate *v.* 对...评价; 为...鉴定  
evident *a.* 明显的, 明白的  
exaggerate *v.* 夸张, 夸大; 对...言过其实  
excerpt *n.* 摘录, 选录, 节录  
excessive *a.* 过多的, 过分的; 极度的  
exclaim *v.* 呼喊, 惊叫  
exclude *v.* 把...排斥在外, 不包括; 不让(或阻止)...进入  
exhaust *v.* 使精疲力竭; 使枯竭  
expand *v.* 发展, 扩大, 扩充  
extend *v.* 延长; 使展期  
external *a.* 外面的, 外部的  
extraordinary *a.* 不平常的, 不普通的, 非凡的, 惊人的  
extravagant *a.* 奢侈的, 铺张的, 浪费的  
fertile *a.* 肥沃的, 富饶的; 可繁殖的, 能生育的  
fiction *n.* 虚构的事  
flexible *a.* 柔韧的, 易弯曲的, 可弯曲的, 灵活的, 易适应的  
foresight *n.* 预见, 先见之明  
formal *a.* 正式的, 合于传统习俗(或礼仪等)的  
fragile *a.* 易碎的, 脆的, 易损坏的  
fragment *n.* 碎片, 破片  
frank *a.* 坦白的, 直率的, 真诚的  
frequency *n.* 次数, 重复发生率



frustration *n.* 挫折, 失败, 失望  
 fulfill *v.* 履行, 实现  
 function *n.* 用途, 目的, 功能, 作用  
 fundamental *a.* 基本的, 根本的, 基础的  
 furthermore *adv.* 而且, 此外  
 harsh *a.* 严厉的, 无情的, 严酷的  
 hesitate *v.* 犹豫, 踌躇, 迟疑不决  
 hinder *v.* 阻碍, 妨碍, 阻止  
 horizontal *a.* 水平的, 横的  
 hostile *a.* 怀敌意的, 不友善的  
 humane *a.* 仁爱的, 慈善的, 人道的  
 humiliate *v.* 使蒙耻, 使丢脸  
 idle *a.* 闲散的, 闲置的  
 illustrate *v.* (用图或例子)说明, 阐明  
 impression *n.* 印象, 感想  
 impulse *n.* 冲动, 突然的欲望, 一时的念头  
 incredible *a.* 难以置信的, 不可思议的  
 indicate *v.* 标示, 指示, 指出  
 inferior *a.* (地位、等级等)低等的, 下级的  
 influence *v.* 影响, 感化  
 inhabit *v.* 居住于  
 intense *a.* 强烈的, 剧烈的, 极度的  
 intentional *a.* 有意的, 故意的  
 interference *n.* 干涉, 干预; 扰乱  
 internal *a.* 内的, 内部的  
 interpret *v.* 解释, 说明, 释明  
 interval *n.* (时间、空间上的)间隔, 间距  
 investigate *v.* 调查, 调查研究, 审查  
 legible *a.* 清楚的, 易读的  
 linger *v.* 继续逗留, 留恋徘徊  
 maintain *v.* 维持, 保持  
 maximum *a.* 最高的, 最大的, 顶点的  
 minimum *a.* 最低的, 最小的  
 miserable *a.* 痛苦的, 苦恼的  
 misinterpret *v.* 错误地理解, 错误地解释  
 misleading *a.* 使人产生误解的, 导致错误结论的  
 monotonous *a.* 单一得令人厌倦的, 毫无变化的  
 negligent *a.* 疏忽的, 忽略的  
 neutral *a.* 中立的  
 nevertheless *ad.* 仍然, 不过  
 objection *n.* 反对, 异议  
 objective *n.* 目的, 目标  
 obnoxious *a.* 使人非常不快的, 可憎的  
 observe *v.* 看到, 注意到  
 obtain *v.* 得到, 获得  
 occur *v.* 发生

originate *v.* 起源, 来自, 产生  
 overcome *v.* 克服  
 overwhelm *v.* 征服, 制服, 压倒  
 peculiar *a.* 奇怪的, 古怪的  
 penalize *v.* 对…处罚, 对…处刑  
 perceive *v.* 感知, 感觉, 察觉  
 phrase *n.* 词组, 习语  
 possess *v.* 具有(品质等)  
 potential *n.* 潜力, 潜能  
 practical *a.* 实践的, 实际的  
 precaution *n.* 预防措施, 防备办法  
 precede *v.* (顺序、位置或时间上)处在…之前, 先于  
 precise *a.* 精确的, 准确的, 确切的  
 preconception *n.* 先入之见, 成见  
 preference *n.* 更加的喜爱, 偏爱  
 preserve *v.* 保护, 保养, 维护, 保全  
 prey *n.* 被捕食的动物, 捕获的  
 primary *a.* 首要的, 主要的  
 principal *a.* 最重要的, 首要的, 主要的  
 procedure *n.* 程序, 手续, 步骤  
 propose *v.* 提出, 提议, 建议  
 prosper *v.* 兴旺, 繁荣; 成功  
 protest *v.* 抗议, 提出异议, 反对  
 pursue *v.* 进行, 实行; 从事  
 random *a.* 无一定之规的, 任意的  
 recollect (重新)集中(思想等)  
 reduction *n.* 减少, 缩减  
 reform *v.* 改革, 改变, 改造  
 rejection *n.* 拒绝, 退回  
 reliable *a.* 可靠的, 可信赖的  
 reluctant *a.* 不情愿的, 勉强的  
 remedy *n.* 治疗, 治疗法  
 remote *a.* 远的, 遥远的, 久远的  
 renew *v.* 使更生, 补充, 加固  
 represent *v.* 代表  
 resemble *v.* 像, 与…相似, 类似于  
 resent *v.* 对…表示忿恨, 对…怀恨, 怨恨  
 resort *v.* 求助; 凭借, 借用  
 resources *n.* 资源, 财富  
 respond *v.* 作答, 回答  
 restore *v.* 使复原, 修复, 整修  
 revise *v.* 修订, 订正  
 revive *v.* 苏醒, 复苏  
 rigid *a.* (不弯曲、不拉伸而)具刚性的, 坚硬的, 坚固的  
 scarce *a.* 缺乏的, 不足的, 供不应求的  
 security *n.* 安全, 平安

seize *v.* 夺取  
 severe *a.* 严重的, 危险的  
 shallow *a.* 浅的, 不深的  
 significant *a.* 相当数量的, 不可忽略的, 值得注意的  
 sole *a.* 单独的, 唯一的  
 solemn *a.* 严重的, 严正的, 庄严的  
 solitary *a.* 单独的, 独自的  
 specific *a.* 明确的, 确切的, 具体的  
 spite *n.* 恶意, 怨恨  
 stress *n.* 压力, 紧张, 紧迫  
 strive *v.* 努力, 奋斗  
 substance *n.* 物质, 材料, 东西  
 sufficient *a.* 足够的, 充足的  
 suitable *a.* 合适的, 适宜的, 适当的  
 surplus *a.* 过剩的, 剩余的, 多余的  
 symbolize *v.* 作为…的象征, 象征, 标志  
 sympathize *v.* 同情, 表示同情, 怜悯  
 temporary *a.* 暂时的, 临时的  
 tendency *n.* (性格或性质上的)倾向  
 theme *n.* 题目, 主题  
 theory *n.* 理论; 学理, 原理  
 thorough *a.* 彻底地, 完全的, 透彻的  
 thrive *v.* 兴旺发达, 繁荣, 旺盛  
 timid *a.* 胆怯的, 易受惊的  
 tolerance *n.* 容忍, 宽容  
 trait *n.* 特征, 特点, 特性  
 transfer *v.* 搬, 使转移  
 transform *v.* 使变形, 使改观  
 transparent *a.* 透明的  
 triumph *n.* 胜利, 得胜  
 ultimate *a.* 极点的, 绝顶的, 终极的  
 unanimous *a.* 全体一致的, 一致同意的  
 unstable *a.* 不稳定的, 不坚定的, 易动摇的  
 utilize *v.* 利用  
 vague *a.* 含糊的, 不明确的  
 vanish *v.* 突然不见, 消失  
 variety *n.* 种种  
 vary *v.* 使不同, 更改, 改变  
 vast *a.* 广阔的, 广大的  
 version *n.* (某人或从某一角度对事物所作的)一种描述、说法  
 vertical *a.* 垂直的, 竖的  
 vicinity *n.* 周围地区, 临近地区  
 wholesome *a.* 有益于健康的, 增进健康的  
 withdraw *v.* 抽回, 移开

# VOCABULARY PERFORMANCE CHART

*Homer Approach*

## Chapters

	Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts; Syn/Ant; Analogies	Final Check		Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts; Syn/Ant; Analogies	Final Check
1	_____	_____	_____	_____	14	_____	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	_____	_____	_____	15	_____	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	_____	_____	_____	16	_____	_____	_____	_____
4	_____	_____	_____	_____	17	_____	_____	_____	_____
5	_____	_____	_____	_____	18	_____	_____	_____	_____
6	_____	_____	_____	_____	19	_____	_____	_____	_____
7	_____	_____	_____	_____	20	_____	_____	_____	_____
8	_____	_____	_____	_____	21	_____	_____	_____	_____
9	_____	_____	_____	_____	22	_____	_____	_____	_____
10	_____	_____	_____	_____	23	_____	_____	_____	_____
11	_____	_____	_____	_____	24	_____	_____	_____	_____
12	_____	_____	_____	_____	25	_____	_____	_____	_____
13	_____	_____	_____	_____					

## Unit Tests

	Test 1	Test 2	Test 3
Unit One	_____	_____	_____
Unit Two	_____	_____	_____
Unit Three	_____	_____	_____
Unit Four	_____	_____	_____
Unit Five	_____	_____	_____

## GROUNDWORK 英语词汇基础 VOCABULARY

“英语词汇学习丛书”由美国知名的教材教辅图书出版社 Townsend Press 出版, 是美国大学生使用最为广泛的扩大词汇的教学辅导图书之一。正如本丛书的编者所指出的那样, 在美国一个学生的前途在某种程度上取决于他 / 她的词汇量的大小。对于我国广大的英语学习者来说, 词汇学习当然是英语学习的一个重要方面。

本丛书共有 6 册。每册介绍 240-300 个在 TOEFL、GRE、SAT 等测试中经常出现的单词。本丛书的特点是引导学生根据上下文的语境, 包括例证、同义、异义、类比等关系来理解单词, 通过反复练习、多次使用来熟悉和记忆单词, 从而摒弃死记硬背的学习方法。书中对每个关键单词提供的各类练习能让学生反复使用该单词达 10 次左右。此外, 书中部分练习题的题型与 TOEFL、GRE、SAT 等美国常用入学考试的形式相似, 对于我国有志于出国留学的学生熟悉题型也有一定的帮助。

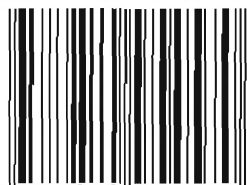
《英语词汇基础》(*Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary*) 为本丛书的第二册, 书中提供的英语词汇练习适用于我国大学非英语专业四级 (CET4) 学生的水平, 也可以用作 TOEFL 培训初、中级阶段的辅助教材。

### Townsend Press 英语词汇学习丛书书目

Books in the Townsend Press Vocabulary Series: A Comprehensive Vocabulary Program

<i>Vocabulary Basics</i>	《英语词汇入门》
<i>Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary</i>	《英语词汇基础》
<i>Building Vocabulary Skills</i>	《英语词汇提高》
<i>Improving Vocabulary Skills</i>	《英语词汇扩展》
<i>Advancing Vocabulary Skills</i>	《英语词汇突破》
<i>Advanced Word Power</i>	《英语词汇飞跃》

ISBN 7-81095-457-1



9 787810 954570 >

定价: 27.00 元